Virtualization Guide

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Virtualization Guide
Guide to Virtualization on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6
Edition 1

Author


The text of and illustrations in this document are licensed by Red Hat under a Creative Commons Attribution–Share Alike 3.0 Unported license ("CC-BY-SA"). An explanation of CC-BY-SA is available at http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/. In accordance with CC-BY-SA, if you distribute this document or an adaptation of it, you must provide the URL for the original version.

Red Hat, as the licensor of this document, waives the right to enforce, and agrees not to assert, Section 4d of CC-BY-SA to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law.

Red Hat, Red Hat Enterprise Linux, the Shadowman logo, JBoss, MetaMatrix, Fedora, the Infinity Logo, and RHCE are trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States and other countries.

Java® is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

XFS® is a trademark of Silicon Graphics International Corp. or its subsidiaries in the United States and/or other countries.

MySQL® is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

1801 Varsity Drive
Raleigh, NC 27606-2072 USA
Phone: +1 919 754 3700
Phone: 888 733 4281
Fax: +1 919 754 3701

The Red Hat Enterprise Linux Virtualization Guide contains information on installation, configuring, administering, and troubleshooting virtualization technologies included with Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
# Preface

1. Document Conventions ........................................................................................................ vii
   1.1. Typographic Conventions ............................................................................................... vii
   1.2. Pull-quote Conventions .................................................................................................. ix
   1.3. Notes and Warnings ........................................................................................................ ix

2. We need your feedback ........................................................................................................ x

# 1. Introduction

1.1. What is virtualization? ........................................................................................................ 1
1.2. KVM and virtualization in Red Hat Enterprise Linux ........................................................ 1
1.3. libvirt and the libvirt tools .............................................................................................. 2
1.4. Virtualized hardware devices ............................................................................................ 2
   1.4.1. Virtualized and emulated devices .............................................................................. 3
   1.4.2. Para-virtualized drivers ........................................................................................... 4
   1.4.3. Physically shared devices ......................................................................................... 5
1.5. Storage .............................................................................................................................. 6
1.6. Virtualization security features ......................................................................................... 7
1.7. Migration ............................................................................................................................ 7
1.8. V2V .................................................................................................................................... 8

# I. Requirements and limitations

2. System requirements ........................................................................................................... 11

3. KVM compatibility ............................................................................................................... 13

4. Virtualization limitations .................................................................................................... 15
   4.1. General limitations for virtualization .......................................................................... 15
   4.2. KVM limitations ........................................................................................................... 15
   4.3. Application limitations ................................................................................................. 16

# II. Installation

5. Installing the virtualization packages .................................................................................. 21
   5.1. Installing KVM with a new Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation ................................ 21
   5.2. Installing KVM packages on an existing Red Hat Enterprise Linux system .................. 25

6. Virtualized guest installation overview ............................................................................. 27
   6.1. Virtualized guest prerequisites and considerations ...................................................... 27
   6.2. Creating guests with virt-install ................................................................................... 27
   6.3. Creating guests with virt-manager ............................................................................... 28
   6.4. Installing guests with PXE ........................................................................................... 37

7. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest .............................................. 43
   7.1. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with local installation media ................. 43
   7.2. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with a network installation tree .............. 53
   7.3. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with PXE ............................................... 55

8. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 ............................................................................................................... 59
   8.1. Using virt-install ........................................................................................................... 59
   8.2. Using virt-manager ....................................................................................................... 60

9. Installing a fully-virtualized Windows guest ....................................................................... 71
   9.1. Using virt-install to create a guest ............................................................................... 71
   9.2. Installing Windows 2003 ............................................................................................... 72
III. Configuration

10. Network Configuration
   10.1. Network Address Translation (NAT) with libvirt .................................................... 75
   10.2. Bridged networking with libvirt .............................................................................. 76

11. KVM Para-virtualized Drivers
   11.1. Using the para-virtualized drivers with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 guests ........... 79
   11.2. Installing the KVM Windows para-virtualized drivers ............................................ 82
       11.2.1. Installing the drivers on an installed Windows guest ........................................... 82
       11.2.2. Installing drivers during the Windows installation .............................................. 92
   11.3. Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for existing devices ....................................... 99
   11.4. Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for new devices ............................................ 100

12. PCI passthrough
   12.1. Adding a PCI device with virsh ........................................................................ 108
   12.2. Adding a PCI device with virt-manager ................................................................ 110
   12.3. PCI passthrough with virt-install ........................................................................ 114

13. SR-IOV
   13.1. Introduction .................................................................................................. 117
   13.2. Using SR-IOV ................................................................................................. 118
   13.3. Troubleshooting SR-IOV .................................................................................. 121

14. KVM guest timing management ............................................................................. 123

IV. Administration

15. Server best practices ............................................................................................ 129

16. Security for virtualization
   16.1. Storage security issues ...................................................................................... 131
   16.2. SELinux and virtualization ................................................................................ 131
   16.3. SELinux ......................................................................................................... 133
   16.4. Virtualization firewall information ...................................................................... 133

17. sVirt
   17.1. Security and Virtualization ............................................................................. 136
   17.2. sVirt labeling .................................................................................................. 136

18. KVM live migration
   18.1. Live migration requirements ............................................................................. 139
   18.2. Shared storage example: NFS for a simple migration ......................................... 140
   18.3. Live KVM migration with virsh ......................................................................... 141
   18.4. Migrating with virt-manager ............................................................................. 142

19. Remote management of virtualized guests
   19.1. Remote management with SSH ........................................................................ 155
   19.2. Remote management over TLS and SSL ......................................................... 156
   19.3. Transport modes ............................................................................................. 157

20. Overcommitting with KVM .................................................................................... 161

21. KSM .................................................................................................................. 165

22. Advanced virtualization administration
   22.1. Guest scheduling ............................................................................................. 169
   22.2. Advanced memory management ...................................................................... 169
   22.3. Guest block I/O throttling ................................................................................. 169
   22.4. Guest network I/O throttling ............................................................................. 169
23. Migrating to KVM from other hypervisors using virt-v2v
   23.1. Preparing to convert a virtualized guest ................................................................. 171
   23.2. Converting virtualized guests ........................................................................................ 175
      23.2.1. virt-v2v ...................................................................................................... 175
      23.2.2. Converting a local Xen virtualized guest .............................................................. 177
      23.2.3. Converting a remote Xen virtualized guest ............................................................ 177
      23.2.4. Converting a VMware ESX virtualized guest ............................................................. 177
      23.2.5. Converting a virtualized guest running Windows .................................................. 178
   23.3. Running converted virtualized guests ............................................................................... 179
   23.4. Configuration changes .................................................................................................... 179
      23.4.1. Configuration changes for Linux virtualized guests .................................................. 179
      23.4.2. Configuration changes for Windows virtualized guests ........................................... 180

24. Miscellaneous administration tasks ................................................................................. 183
   24.1. Automatically starting guests ...................................................................................... 183
   24.2. Using qemu-img ........................................................................................................ 183
   24.3. Verifying virtualization extensions ............................................................................. 184
   24.4. Setting KVM processor affinities .................................................................................. 185
   24.5. Generating a new unique MAC address ...................................................................... 189
   24.6. Improving guest response time ................................................................................... 190
   24.7. Very Secure ft pd ...................................................................................................... 191
   24.8. Disable SMART disk monitoring for guests ................................................................. 192
   24.9. Configuring a VNC Server .......................................................................................... 192
   24.10. Gracefully shutting down guests ................................................................................. 192
   24.11. Virtual machine timer management with libvirt ..................................................... 193

V. Virtualization storage topics ............................................................................................ 197

25. Storage concepts .................................................................................................................. 199
   25.1. Storage pools .............................................................................................................. 199
   25.2. Volumes ..................................................................................................................... 200

26. Storage pools ..................................................................................................................... 203
   26.1. Creating storage pools ............................................................................................... 203
      26.1.1. Dedicated storage device-based storage pools ......................................................... 203
      26.1.2. Partition-based storage pools ................................................................................. 205
      26.1.3. Directory-based storage pools ................................................................................. 211
      26.1.4. LVM-based storage pools ....................................................................................... 217
      26.1.5. iSCSI-based storage pools ....................................................................................... 223
      26.1.6. NFS-based storage pools ......................................................................................... 232

27. Volumes ............................................................................................................................ 237
   27.1. Creating volumes ........................................................................................................ 237
   27.2. Cloning volumes ......................................................................................................... 237
   27.3. Adding storage devices to guests ................................................................................ 238
      27.3.1. Adding file based storage to a guest ........................................................................ 238
      27.3.2. Adding hard drives and other block devices to a guest ........................................ 240
   27.4. Deleting and removing volumes ................................................................................ 241

28. Miscellaneous storage topics ............................................................................................. 243
   28.1. Creating a virtualized floppy disk controller ............................................................... 243
   28.2. Configuring persistent storage in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 .................................... 244
   28.3. Accessing data from a guest disk image ..................................................................... 247

29. N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) ...................................................................................... 251
   29.1. Enabling NPIV on the switch ....................................................................................... 251
Preface

Welcome to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Virtualization Guide. This guide covers all aspects of using and managing virtualization products included with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

This book is divided into 7 parts:
• System Requirements
• Installation
• Configuration
• Administration
• Reference
• Troubleshooting
• Appendixes

Key terms and concepts used throughout this book are covered in the Glossary.

1. Document Conventions

This manual uses several conventions to highlight certain words and phrases and draw attention to specific pieces of information.

In PDF and paper editions, this manual uses typefaces drawn from the Liberation Fonts\(^1\) set. The Liberation Fonts set is also used in HTML editions if the set is installed on your system. If not, alternative but equivalent typefaces are displayed. Note: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and later includes the Liberation Fonts set by default.

1.1. Typographic Conventions

Four typographic conventions are used to call attention to specific words and phrases. These conventions, and the circumstances they apply to, are as follows.

**Mono-spaced Bold**

Used to highlight system input, including shell commands, file names and paths. Also used to highlight keycaps and key combinations. For example:

To see the contents of the file `my_next_bestselling_novel` in your current working directory, enter the `cat my_next_bestselling_novel` command at the shell prompt and press **Enter** to execute the command.

The above includes a file name, a shell command and a keycap, all presented in mono-spaced bold and all distinguishable thanks to context.

Key combinations can be distinguished from keycaps by the hyphen connecting each part of a key combination. For example:

Press **Enter** to execute the command.

\(^1\) https://fedorahosted.org/liberation-fonts/
Press Ctrl+Alt+F2 to switch to the first virtual terminal. Press Ctrl+Alt+F1 to return to your X-Windows session.

The first paragraph highlights the particular keycap to press. The second highlights two key combinations (each a set of three keycaps with each set pressed simultaneously).

If source code is discussed, class names, methods, functions, variable names and returned values mentioned within a paragraph will be presented as above, in mono-spaced bold. For example:

File-related classes include filesystem for file systems, file for files, and dir for directories. Each class has its own associated set of permissions.

Proportional Bold

This denotes words or phrases encountered on a system, including application names; dialog box text; labeled buttons; check-box and radio button labels; menu titles and sub-menu titles. For example:

Choose System → Preferences → Mouse from the main menu bar to launch Mouse Preferences. In the Buttons tab, click the Left-handed mouse check box and click Close to switch the primary mouse button from the left to the right (making the mouse suitable for use in the left hand).

To insert a special character into a gedit file, choose Applications → Accessories → Character Map from the main menu bar. Next, choose Search → Find... from the Character Map menu bar, type the name of the character in the Search field and click Next. The character you sought will be highlighted in the Character Table. Double-click this highlighted character to place it in the Text to copy field and then click the Copy button. Now switch back to your document and choose Edit → Paste from the gedit menu bar.

The above text includes application names; system-wide menu names and items; application-specific menu names; and buttons and text found within a GUI interface, all presented in proportional bold and all distinguishable by context.

Mono-spaced Bold Italic or Proportional Bold Italic

Whether mono-spaced bold or proportional bold, the addition of italics indicates replaceable or variable text. Italics denotes text you do not input literally or displayed text that changes depending on circumstance. For example:

To connect to a remote machine using ssh, type ssh username@domain.name at a shell prompt. If the remote machine is example.com and your username on that machine is john, type ssh john@example.com.

The mount -o remount file-system command remounts the named file system. For example, to remount the /home file system, the command is mount -o remount /home.

To see the version of a currently installed package, use the rpm -q package command. It will return a result as follows: package-version-release.

Note the words in bold italics above — username, domain.name, file-system, package, version and release. Each word is a placeholder, either for text you enter when issuing a command or for text displayed by the system.

Aside from standard usage for presenting the title of a work, italics denotes the first use of a new and important term. For example:
Publican is a DocBook publishing system.

1.2. Pull-quote Conventions
Terminal output and source code listings are set off visually from the surrounding text.

Output sent to a terminal is set in **mono-spaced** **roman** and presented thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>books</th>
<th>Desktop</th>
<th>documentation</th>
<th>drafts</th>
<th>mss</th>
<th>photos</th>
<th>stuff</th>
<th>svn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>books_tests</td>
<td>Desktop1</td>
<td>downloads</td>
<td>images</td>
<td>notes</td>
<td>scripts</td>
<td>svgs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source-code listings are also set in **mono-spaced** **roman** but add syntax highlighting as follows:

```java
package org.jboss.book.jca.ex1;

import javax.naming.InitialContext;

public class ExClient
{
    public static void main(String args[])
    throws Exception
    {
        InitialContext iniCtx = new InitialContext();
        Object         ref    = iniCtx.lookup("EchoBean");
        EchoHome       home   = (EchoHome) ref;
        Echo           echo   = home.create();

        System.out.println("Created Echo");
        System.out.println("Echo.echo('Hello') = " + echo.echo("Hello"));
    }
}
```

1.3. Notes and Warnings
Finally, we use three visual styles to draw attention to information that might otherwise be overlooked.

Note

Notes are tips, shortcuts or alternative approaches to the task at hand. Ignoring a note should have no negative consequences, but you might miss out on a trick that makes your life easier.

Important

Important boxes detail things that are easily missed: configuration changes that only apply to the current session, or services that need restarting before an update will apply. Ignoring a box labeled 'Important' will not cause data loss but may cause irritation and frustration.

Warning

Warnings should not be ignored. Ignoring warnings will most likely cause data loss.
2. We need your feedback

If you find a typographical error in this manual, or if you have thought of a way to make this manual better, we would love to hear from you. Submit a report in Bugzilla: http://bugzilla.redhat.com/ against the Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux product.

When submitting a bug report, be sure to refer to the correct component: doc-Virtualization_Guide and version number: 6.

If you have a suggestion for improving the documentation, try to be as specific as possible when describing it. If you have found an error, include the section number and some of the surrounding text so we can find it easily.
Introduction

This chapter introduces various virtualization technologies, applications and features and explains how they work. The purpose of this chapter is to assist Red Hat Enterprise Linux users in understanding the basics of virtualization.

1.1. What is virtualization?

Virtualization is a broad computing term for running software, usually operating systems, concurrently and isolated from other programs on one system. Most existing implementations of virtualization use a hypervisor, a software layer that controls hardware and provides guest operating systems with access to underlying hardware. The hypervisor allows multiple operating systems to run on the same physical system by offering virtualized hardware to the guest operating system. There are various methods for virtualizing operating systems:

- Hardware-assisted virtualization is the technique used for full virtualization with KVM.
- Para-virtualization is a technique used by Xen to run Linux guests.
- Software virtualization or emulation. Software virtualization uses binary translation and other emulation techniques to run unmodified operating systems. Software virtualization is significantly slower than hardware-assisted virtualization or para-virtualization. Software virtualization, using QEMU without KVM, is unsupported by Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

1.2. KVM and virtualization in Red Hat Enterprise Linux

What is KVM?

(KVM) is a Full virtualization solution for Linux on AMD64 and Intel 64 hardware. KVM is a Linux kernel module built for the standard Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 kernel. KVM can run multiple, unmodified virtualized guest Windows and Linux operating systems. The KVM hypervisor in Red Hat Enterprise Linux is managed with the libvirt API and tools built for libvirt, virt-manager and virsh. Virtualized guests are run as Linux processes and threads which are controlled by these modules.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux KVM hypervisors can be managed by the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager as an alternative to the virsh and virt-manager tools.

The kvm package also contains Linux kernel modules which manage devices, memory and management APIs for the Hypervisor module itself.

This book covers virtualization topics for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. The Kernel based Virtual Machine (KVM) hypervisor is provided with Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The KVM hypervisor supports Full virtualization.

Overcommitting

The KVM hypervisor supports overcommitting virtualized CPUs and memory. Overcommitting means allocating more virtualized CPUs or memory than the available resources on the system. CPU overcommitting allows virtualized guests to run on fewer servers and in higher densities. Memory overcommitting allows hosts to utilize memory and virtual memory to increase guest densities.

For more information on overcommitting with KVM, refer to Chapter 20, Overcommitting with KVM.
Chapter 1. Introduction

KSM
Kernel SamePage Merging (KSM) is used by the KVM hypervisor to allow KVM guests to share identical memory pages. These shared pages are usually common libraries or other identical, high-use data. KSM allows for greater guest density of identical or similar guest operating systems by avoiding memory duplication.

For more information on KSM, refer to Chapter 21, KSM.

1.3. libvirt and the libvirt tools
Libvirt is a hypervisor-independent virtualization API that is able to interact with the virtualization capabilities of a range of operating systems.

libvirt provides a common, generic and stable layer to securely manage virtualized guests on a host. libvirt provides a common interface for managing local systems and networked hosts. libvirt provides all APIs required to provision, create, modify, monitor, control, migrate and stop virtualized guests if the hypervisor supports these operations. Although multiple hosts may be accessed with libvirt simultaneously, the APIs are limited to single node operations.

libvirt is designed as a building block for higher level management tools and applications. libvirt focuses on managing single hosts, with the exception of migration capabilities. libvirt provides APIs to enumerate, monitor and use the resources available on the managed node, including CPUs, memory, storage, networking and Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA) partitions. The management tools can be located on separate physical machines from the host using secure protocols.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 supports libvirt and included libvirt-based tools as its default method for virtualization management.

libvirt is free software available under the GNU Lesser General Public License. The libvirt project aims to provide a long term stable C API. The libvirt Open Source project currently supports Xen, QEmu, KVM, LXC, OpenVZ, VirtualBox, OpenNebula, and VMware ESX. The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 libvirt package supports Xen on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and KVM on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

virsh
The virsh command-line tool is built on the libvirt management API and operates as an alternative to the graphical virt-manager application. The virsh command can be used in read-only mode by unprivileged users or, with root access, full administration functionality. The virsh command is ideal for scripting virtualization administration.

The virsh command is included in the libvirt-client package.

virt-manager
virt-manager is a graphical desktop tool for managing virtualized guests. virt-manager can be used to perform virtualization administration, virtualized guest creation, migration and configuration tasks. virt-manager allows access to graphical guest consoles. virt-manager can view virtualized guests, host statistics, device information and performance graphs. virt-manager can manage the local hypervisor and remote hypervisors using the same interface and methods.

1.4. Virtualized hardware devices
Virtualization on Red Hat Linux 6 presents three distinct types of system devices to virtualized guests. The three types include:
• Emulated software devices.
• Para-virtualized devices.
• Physically shared devices.

These hardware devices all appear as physically attached hardware devices to the virtualized guest but the device drivers work in different ways.

1.4.1. Virtualized and emulated devices
The KVM hypervisor implements many core devices for virtualized guests in software. These emulated hardware devices are crucial for virtualizing operating systems. This section is provided as an introduction to the emulated devices and emulated device drivers.

Emulated devices are virtual devices which exist entirely in software. The emulated devices do not require a real hardware device to back them.

Emulated drivers may use either a physical device or a virtual software device. Emulated drivers are a translation layer between the guest and the Linux kernel (which manages the source device). The device level instructions are completely translated by the KVM hypervisor. Any device, of the same type, recognized by the Linux kernel may be used as the backing source device for the emulated drivers.

Virtualized CPUs (VCPUs)
A system has a number of virtual CPUs (VCPUs) relative to the number of physical processor cores. The number of virtual CPUs is finite and represents the total number of virtual CPUs that can be assigned to guest virtual machines.

Emulated graphics devices
Two emulated graphics devices are provided. These devices can be connected to with the SPICE protocol or with VNC.

• The ac97 device emulates a Cirrus CLGD 5446 PCI VGA card.
• The vga device emulates a dummy VGA card with Bochs VESA extensions (hardware level, including all non-standard modes).

Emulated system components
Various core system components are emulated to provide basic system functions.

• A Cirrus i440FX host PCI bridge.
• PIIX3 PCI to ISA bridge.
• A PS/2 mouse and keyboard.
• An EvTouch USB Graphics Tablet.
• A PCI UHCI USB controller and a virtualized USB hub.
• A PCI and ISA network adapters.
• Emulated serial ports.
**Emulated sound devices**
Two emulated sound devices are available:

- The ac97 device emulates an Intel 82801AA AC97 Audio compatible sound card.
- The es1370 device emulates an ENSONIQ AudioPCI ES1370 sound card.

**Emulated network drivers**
There are four emulated network drivers available for network devices:

- The e1000 driver emulates an Intel E1000 network adaptor (Intel 82540EM, 82573L, 82544GC).
- The ne2k_pci driver emulates a Novell NE2000 network adaptor.
- The pcnet driver emulates an AMD Lance Am7990 network adaptor.
- The rtl8139 driver emulates a Realtek 8139 network adaptor.

**Emulated storage drivers**
Storage devices and storage pools can use the emulated drivers to attach storage devices to virtualized guests. Alternatively, the para-virtualized drivers can be used.

Note that the storage drivers are not storage devices. The drivers are used to attach a backing storage device, file or storage pool volume to a virtualized guest. The backing storage device can be any supported type of storage device, file, or storage pool volume.

The emulated IDE driver
The KVM hypervisor provides two emulated PCI IDE interfaces. The emulated IDE driver can be used to attach any combination of up to four virtualized IDE hard disks or virtualized IDE CD-ROM drives to each virtualized guest. The emulated IDE driver is used for virtualized CD-ROM and DVD-ROM drives.

The emulated floppy disk drive driver
The emulated floppy disk drive driver is used for creating virtualized floppy drives.

**1.4.2. Para-virtualized drivers**
Para-virtualized drivers are device drivers that increase the I/O performance of virtualized guests.

Para-virtualized drivers decrease I/O latency and increase I/O throughput to near bare-metal levels. It is recommended to use the para-virtualized drivers for virtualized guests running I/O intensive applications.

The para-virtualized drivers must be installed on the guest operating system. By default, the para-virtualized drivers are included in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.7 and newer, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4 and newer and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0 and newer. The para-virtualized drivers must be manually installed on Windows guests. For more information on using the para-virtualized drivers refer to Chapter 11, KVM Para-virtualized Drivers.

**Para-virtualized network driver**
The para-virtualized network driver is a Red Hat branded virtual network device. The para-virtualized network driver can be used as the driver for existing network devices or new network devices for virtualized guests.
Para-virtualized block driver
The para-virtualized block driver is a driver for all storage devices supported by the hypervisor attached to the virtualized guest (except for floppy disk drives, which must be emulated).

The para-virtualized clock
Guests using the Time Stamp Counter (TSC) as a clock source may suffer timing issues.

KVM works around hosts that do not have a constant Time Stamp Counter by providing guests with a para-virtualized clock.

For more information on the para-virtualized clock refer to Chapter 14, KVM guest timing management.

The para-virtualized serial driver
The para-virtualized serial driver (virtio-serial) is a bytestream-oriented, character stream driver. The para-virtualized serial driver provides a simple communication interface between the host's user space and the guest's user space where networking is not available or unusable.

The balloon driver
The balloon driver allows guests to express to the hypervisor how much memory they require. The balloon driver allows the host to efficiently allocate memory to the guest and allow free memory to be allocated to other guests and processes.

Guests using the balloon driver can mark sections of the guest's RAM as not in use (balloon inflation). The hypervisor can free the memory and use the memory for other host processes or other guests on that host.

When the guest requires the freed memory again, the hypervisor can reallocate RAM to the guest (balloon deflation).

1.4.3. Physically shared devices
Certain hardware platforms allow virtualized guests to directly access various hardware devices and components. This process in virtualization is known as passthrough. Passthrough is known as device assignment in some of the KVM documentation and the KVM code.

PCI passthrough
The KVM hypervisor supports attaching PCI devices on the host system to virtualized guests. PCI passthrough allows guests to have exclusive access to PCI devices for a range of tasks. PCI passthrough allows PCI devices to appear and behave as if they were physically attached to the guest operating system.

Almost all PCI and PCI Express devices that support passthrough, except for graphics cards, can be directly attached to virtualized guests with PCI passthrough.

SR-IOV
SR-IOV (Single Root I/O Virtualization) is a standard for a type of PCI passthrough which natively shares a single device to multiple guests.

SR-IOV enables a Single Root Function (for example, a single Ethernet port), to appear as multiple, separate, physical devices. A physical device with SR-IOV capabilities can be configured to appear
in the PCI configuration space as multiple functions, each device has its own configuration space complete with Base Address Registers (BARs).

SR-IOV uses two new PCI functions:

• Virtualization-PF
• Virtualization VF

For more information on SR-IOV, refer to Chapter 13, SR-IOV.

NPIV
N_PORT ID Virtualization (NPIV) is a function available with some Fibre Channel devices. NPIV shares a single physical N_PORT as multiple N_PORT IDs. NPIV provides similar functionality for Host Bus Adaptors (HBAs) that SR-IOV provides for network interfaces. With NPIV, virtualized guests can be provided with a virtual Fibre Channel initiator to Storage Area Networks (SANs).

NPIV can provide high density virtualized environments with enterprise-level storage solutions.

For more information on NPIV, refer to Chapter 29, N_PORT ID Virtualization (NPIV).

1.5. Storage

Storage for virtualized guests is abstracted from the physical storage used by the guest. Storage is attached to virtualized guests using the para-virtualized (Section 1.4.2, “Para-virtualized drivers”) or emulated block device drivers (Emulated storage drivers).

Storage pools

A storage pool is a file, directory, or storage device managed by libvirt for the purpose of providing storage to virtualized guests. Storage pools are divided into storage volumes that store virtualized guest images or are attached to virtualized guests as additional storage.

Storage pools can be divided up into volumes or allocated directly to a guest. Volumes of a storage pool can be allocated to virtualized guests. There are two categories of storage pool available:

Local storage pools

Local storage pools are directly attached to the host server. Local storage pools include local directories, directly attached disks, and LVM volume groups on local devices.

Local storage pools are useful for development, testing and small deployments that do not require migration or large numbers of virtualized guests. Local storage pools are not suitable for many production environments as local storage pools do not support live migration.

Networked (shared) storage pools

Networked storage pools covers storage devices shared over a network using standard protocols.

Networked storage required for migrating guest virtualized guests between hosts. Networked storage pools are managed by libvirt.

Storage volumes

Storage pools are divided into storage volumes. Storage volumes are an abstraction of physical partitions, LVM logical volumes, file-based disk images and other storage types handled by libvirt.
Storage volumes are presented to virtualized guests as local storage devices regardless of the underlying hardware.

For more information on storage and virtualization refer to Part V, “Virtualization storage topics”.

### 1.6. Virtualization security features

**SELinux**

SELinux was developed by the US National Security Agency and others to provide Mandatory Access Control (MAC) for Linux. All processes and files are given a type and access is limited by fine-grained controls. SELinux limits an attacker's abilities and works to prevent many common security exploits such as buffer overflow attacks and privilege escalation.

SELinux strengthens the security model of Red Hat Enterprise Linux hosts and virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux guests. SELinux is configured and tested to work, by default, with all virtualization tools shipped with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

For more information on SELinux and virtualization, refer to Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization”.

**sVirt**

sVirt is a technology included in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 that integrates SELinux and virtualization. sVirt applies Mandatory Access Control (MAC) to improve security when using virtualized guests. sVirt improves security and hardens the system against bugs in the hypervisor that might be used as an attack vector for the host or to another virtualized guest.

For more information on sVirt, refer to Chapter 17, sVirt.

### 1.7. Migration

Migration is the term for the process of moving a virtualized guest from one host to another. Migration can be conducted offline (where the guest is suspended and then moved) or live (where a guest is moved without suspending).

Migration is a key feature of virtualization as software is completely separated from hardware. Migration is useful for:

- **Load balancing** - guests can be moved to hosts with lower usage when a host becomes overloaded.
- **Hardware failover** - when hardware devices on the host start to fail, guests can be safely relocated so the host can be powered down and repaired.
- **Energy saving** - guests can be redistributed to other hosts and host systems powered off to save energy and cut costs in low usage periods.
- **Geographic migration** - guests can be moved to another location for lower latency or in serious circumstances.

Migration only moves the virtualized guest's memory. The guest's storage is located on networked storage which is shared between the source host and the destination.

Shared, networked storage must be used for storing guest images. Without shared storage migration is not possible. It is recommended to use libvirt managed storage pools for shared storage.
Chapter 1. Introduction

**Offline migration**
An offline migration suspends the guest then moves an image of the guest's memory to the destination host. The guest is resumed on the destination host and then memory the guest used on the source host is freed.

**Live migration**
Live migration is the process of migrating a *running* guest from one physical host to another physical host.

For more information on migration refer to *Chapter 18, KVM live migration*.

**1.8. V2V**
Virtualized to virtualized migration, known as V2V, is supported in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 for certain virtualized guests.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 provides tools for converting virtualized guests from other types of hypervisor to KVM. The **virt-v2v** tool converts and imports virtual machines from Xen, other versions of KVM and VMware ESX.

For more information on using V2V, refer to *Chapter 23, Migrating to KVM from other hypervisors using virt-v2v*
Part I. Requirements and limitations

System requirements, support restrictions and limitations for virtualization with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

These chapters outline the system requirements, support restrictions, and limitations of virtualization on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.
System requirements
This chapter lists system requirements for successfully running virtualized guest operating systems with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. Virtualization is available for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 on the Intel 64 and AMD64 architecture.

The KVM hypervisor is provided with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

For information on installing the virtualization packages, read Chapter 5, Installing the virtualization packages.

Minimum system requirements
• 6GB free disk space
• 2GB of RAM.

Recommended system requirements
• 6GB plus the required disk space recommended by the guest operating system per guest. For most operating systems more than 6GB of disk space is recommended.
• One processor core or hyper-thread for each virtualized CPU and one for the hypervisor.
• 2GB of RAM plus additional RAM for virtualized guests.

KVM overcommit
KVM can overcommit physical resources for virtualized guests. Overcommitting resources means the total virtualized RAM and processor cores used by the guests can exceed the physical RAM and processor cores on the host. For information on safely overcommitting resources with KVM refer to Chapter 20, Overcommitting with KVM.

KVM requirements
The KVM hypervisor requires:
• an Intel processor with the Intel VT and the Intel 64 extensions, or
• an AMD processor with the AMD-V and the AMD64 extensions.

Refer to Section 24.3, “Verifying virtualization extensions” to determine if your processor has the virtualization extensions.

Storage support
The working guest storage methods are:
• files on local storage,
• physical disk partitions,
• locally connected physical LUNs,
• LVM partitions,
• NFS shared file systems,
• iSCSI,
Chapter 2. System requirements

- GFS2 clustered file systems, and
- Fibre Channel-based LUNs
- SRP devices (SCSI RDMA Protocol), the block export protocol used in Infiniband and 10GbE iWARP adapters.

**File-based guest storage**

File-based guest images should be stored in the `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` folder. If you use a different directory you must add the directory to the SELinux policy. Refer to Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization” for details.
KVM compatibility

The KVM hypervisor requires a processor with the Intel-VT or AMD-V virtualization extensions.

Note that this list is not complete. Help us expand it by sending in a bug with anything you get working.

To verify whether your processor supports the virtualization extensions and for information on enabling the virtualization extensions if they are disabled, refer to Section 24.3, “Verifying virtualization extensions”.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0 Servers with the kvm package are limited to 256 processor cores or less.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Supported guests</th>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Support level</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 AMD 64 and Intel 64</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 AMD 64 and Intel 64</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 AMD 64 and Intel 64</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fedora 12 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fedora 12 AMD 64 and Intel 64</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fedora 13 x86</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fedora 13 AMD 64 and Intel 64</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 R2 32-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 R2 64-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 2 32-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2003 Service Pack 2 64-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows XP 32-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Vista 32-Bit</td>
<td>Supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Vista 64-Bit</td>
<td>Supported</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2008 32-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Server 2008 (and R2) 64-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 7 32-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 7 64-Bit</td>
<td>Optimized with para-virtualized drivers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Virtualization limitations

This chapter covers additional support and product limitations of the virtualization packages in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

4.1. General limitations for virtualization

Other limitations
For the list of all other limitations and issues affecting virtualization read the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Release Notes. The Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Release Notes cover the present new features, known issues and limitations as they are updated or discovered.

Test before deployment
You should test for the maximum anticipated load and virtualized network stress before deploying heavy I/O applications. Stress testing is important as there are performance drops caused by virtualization with increased I/O usage.

4.2. KVM limitations

The following limitations apply to the KVM hypervisor:

Maximum VCPUs per guest
Virtualized guests support up to a maximum of 64 virtualized CPUs in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0.

Constant TSC bit
Systems without a Constant Time Stamp Counter require additional configuration. Refer to Chapter 14, KVM guest timing management for details on determining whether you have a Constant Time Stamp Counter and configuration steps for fixing any related issues.

Memory overcommit
KVM supports memory overcommit and can store the memory of guests in swap. A guest will run slower if it is swapped frequently. When KSM is used, make sure that the swap size is the size of the overcommit ratio.

CPU overcommit
It is not recommended to have more than 10 virtual CPUs per physical processor core. Any number of overcommitted virtual CPUs above the number of physical processor cores may cause problems with certain virtualized guests.

Overcommitting CPUs has some risk and can lead to instability. Refer to Chapter 20, Overcommitting with KVM for tips and recommendations on overcommitting CPUs.

Virtualized SCSI devices
SCSI emulation is limited to 16 virtualized (emulated) SCSI devices.

Virtualized IDE devices
KVM is limited to a maximum of four virtualized (emulated) IDE devices per guest.
Chapter 4. Virtualization limitations

Para-virtualized devices
Para-virtualized devices, which use the virtio drivers, are PCI devices. Presently, guests are limited to a maximum of 32 PCI devices. Some PCI devices are critical for the guest to run and these devices cannot be removed. The default, required devices are:

- the host bridge,
- the ISA bridge and usb bridge (The usb and isa bridges are the same device),
- the graphics card (using either the Cirrus or qxl driver), and
- the memory balloon device.

Out of the 32 available PCI devices for a guest 4 are not removable. This means there are only 28 PCI slots available for additional devices per guest. Every para-virtualized network or block device uses one slot. Each guest can use up to 28 additional devices made up of any combination of para-virtualized network, para-virtualized disk devices, or other PCI devices using VT-d.

Migration limitations
Live migration is only possible with CPUs from the same vendor (that is, Intel to Intel or AMD to AMD only).

The No eXecution (NX) bit must be set to on or off for both CPUs for live migration.

Storage limitations
The host should not use disk labels to identify file systems in the fstab file, the initrd file or used by the kernel command line. If less privileged users, especially virtualized guests, have write access to whole partitions or LVM volumes the host system could be compromised.

Guest should not be given write access to whole disks or block devices (for example, /dev/sdb). Virtualized guests with access to block devices may be able to access other block devices on the system or modify volume labels which can be used to compromise the host system. Use partitions (for example, /dev/sdb1) or LVM volumes to prevent this issue.

SR-IOV limitations
SR-IOV is only supported with the following devices:

Intel® 82576NS Gigabit Ethernet Controller (igb driver)
Intel® 82576EB Gigabit Ethernet Controller (igb driver)
Neterion X3100 Series 10GbE PCIe (vxge driver)
Intel® 82599ES 10 Gigabit Ethernet Controller (ixgbe driver)
Intel® 82599EB 10 Gigabit Ethernet Controller (ixgbe driver)

PCI passthrough limitations
PCI passthrough (attaching PCI devices to guests) should work on systems with the AMD IOMMU or Intel VT-d technologies.

4.3. Application limitations
There are aspects of virtualization which make virtualization unsuitable for certain types of applications.
Applications with high I/O throughput requirements should use the para-virtualized drivers for fully virtualized guests. Without the para-virtualized drivers certain applications may be unstable under heavy I/O loads.

The following applications should be avoided for their high I/O requirement reasons:

- **kdump** server
- **netdump** server

You should carefully evaluate databasing applications before running them on a virtualized guest. Databases generally use network and storage I/O devices intensively. These applications may not be suitable for a fully virtualized environment. Consider the para-virtualized drivers or PCI passthrough for increased I/O performance. Refer to *Chapter 11, KVM Para-virtualized Drivers* for more information on the para-virtualized drivers for fully virtualized guests. Refer to *Chapter 12, PCI passthrough* for more information on the PCI passthrough.

Other applications and tools which heavily utilize I/O or require real-time performance should be evaluated carefully. Using full virtualization with the para-virtualized drivers (refer to *Chapter 11, KVM Para-virtualized Drivers*) or PCI passthrough (refer to *Chapter 12, PCI passthrough*) results in better performance with I/O intensive applications. Applications still suffer a small performance loss from running in virtualized environments. The performance benefits of virtualization through consolidating to newer and faster hardware should be evaluated against the potential application performance issues associated with using virtualization.
Virtualization installation topics

These chapters cover setting up the host and installing virtualized guests with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. It is recommended to read these chapters carefully to ensure successful installation of virtualized guest operating systems.
Installing the virtualization packages

Before you can use virtualization, the virtualization packages must be installed on your computer. Virtualization packages can be installed either during the installation sequence or after installation using the `yum` command and the Red Hat Network (RHN).

The KVM hypervisor uses the default Red Hat Enterprise Linux kernel with the `kvm` kernel module.

5.1. Installing KVM with a new Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation

This section covers installing virtualization tools and KVM package as part of a fresh Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation.

Need help installing?


1. Start an interactive Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation from the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Installation CD-ROM, DVD or PXE.

2. You must enter a valid installation number when prompted to receive access to the virtualization and other Advanced Platform packages.

3. Complete the other steps up to the package selection step.

---

1 [http://www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/enterprise/]
Chapter 5. Installing the virtualization packages

Select the Virtual Host server role to install a platform for virtualized guests. Alternatively, select the Customize Now radio button to specify individual packages.

4. Select the Virtualization package group. This selects the KVM hypervisor, \texttt{virt-manager}, \texttt{libvirt} and \texttt{virt-viewer} for installation.
5. **Customize the packages (if required)**

Customize the **Virtualization** group if you require other virtualization packages.
Chapter 5. Installing the virtualization packages

24

Press the Close button then the Next button to continue the installation.

Note

You require a valid RHN virtualization entitlement to receive updates for the virtualization packages.

Installing KVM packages with Kickstart files

This section describes how to use a Kickstart file to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux with the KVM hypervisor packages. Kickstart files allow for large, automated installations without a user manually installing each individual system. The steps in this section will assist you in creating and using a Kickstart file to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux with the virtualization packages.

In the %packages section of your Kickstart file, append the following package group:

```bash
%packages
@kvm
```

More information on Kickstart files can be found on Red Hat's website, redhat.com\(^2\), in the Installation Guide.

\(^2\) http://www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/enterprise/
5.2. Installing KVM packages on an existing Red Hat Enterprise Linux system

The section describes the steps for installing the KVM hypervisor on a working Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 or newer system.

Adding packages to your list of Red Hat Network entitlements

This section describes how to enable Red Hat Network (RHN) entitlements for the virtualization packages. You need these entitlements enabled to install and update the virtualization packages on Red Hat Enterprise Linux. You require a valid Red Hat Network account in order to install virtualization packages on Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

In addition, your machines must be registered with RHN. To register an unregistered installation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, run the `rhn_register` command and follow the prompts.

If you do not have a valid Red Hat subscription, visit the Red Hat online store³.

Procedure 5.1. Adding the Virtualization entitlement with RHN

1. Log in to RHN⁴ using your RHN username and password.
2. Select the systems you want to install virtualization on.
3. In the System Properties section the present systems entitlements are listed next to the Entitlements header. Use the (Edit These Properties) link to change your entitlements.
4. Select the Virtualization checkbox.

Your system is now entitled to receive the virtualization packages. The next section covers installing these packages.

Installing the KVM hypervisor with yum

To use virtualization on Red Hat Enterprise Linux you require the `kvm` package. The `kvm` package contains the KVM kernel module providing the KVM hypervisor on the default Red Hat Enterprise Linux kernel.

To install the `kvm` package, run:

```
# yum install kvm
```

Now, install additional virtualization management packages.

Recommended virtualization packages:

- `python-virtinst`
  - Provides the `virt-install` command for creating virtual machines.

- `libvirt`
  - The `libvirt` package provides the server and host side libraries for interacting with hypervisors and host systems. The `libvirt` package provides the `libvirtd` daemon that handles the library calls, manages virtualizes guests and controls the hypervisor.

³ https://www.redhat.com/wapps/store/catalog.html
Chapter 5. Installing the virtualization packages

*libvirt-python*

The *libvirt-python* package contains a module that permits applications written in the Python programming language to use the interface supplied by the *libvirt* API.

*virt-manager*

*virt-manager*, also known as **Virtual Machine Manager**, provides a graphical tool for administering virtual machines. It uses *libvirt-client* library as the management API.

*libvirt-client*

The *libvirt-client* package provides the client-side APIs and libraries for accessing *libvirt* servers. The *libvirt-client* package includes the **virsh** command line tool to manage and control virtualized guests and hypervisors from the command line or a special virtualization shell.

Install the other recommended virtualization packages:

```
# yum install virt-manager libvirt libvirt-python python-virtinst libvirt-client
```
Virtualized guest installation overview

After you have installed the virtualization packages on the host system you can create guest operating systems. This chapter describes the general processes for installing guest operating systems on virtual machines. You can create guests using the New button in virt-manager or use the command line interface virt-install. Both methods are covered by this chapter.

Detailed installation instructions are available for specific versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, other Linux distributions, Solaris and Windows. Refer to the relevant procedure for your guest operating system:

• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.
• Para-virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5: Chapter 8, Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5
• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6: Chapter 7, Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest
• Microsoft Windows operating systems: Chapter 9, Installing a fully-virtualized Windows guest

6.1. Virtualized guest prerequisites and considerations

Various factors should be considered before creating any virtualized guests. Factors include:

• Performance
• Input/output requirements and types of input/output.
• Storage.
• Networking and network infrastructure.
• Guest load and usage for processor and memory resources.

6.2. Creating guests with virt-install

You can use the virt-install command to create virtualized guests from the command line. virt-install is used either interactively or as part of a script to automate the creation of virtual machines. Using virt-install with Kickstart files allows for unattended installation of virtual machines.

The virt-install tool provides a number of options one can pass on the command line. To see a complete list of options run:

```
$ virt-install --help
```

The virt-install man page also documents each command option and important variables.

qemu-img is a related command which may be used before virt-install to configure storage options.

An important option is the --vnc option which opens a graphical window for the guest’s installation.

Example 6.1. Using virt-install to install a RHEL 5 guest

This example creates a RHEL 5 guest with the following settings:
Chapter 6. Virtualized guest installation overview

- Uses LVM partitioning
- Is a plain QEMU guest
- Uses virtual networking
- Boots from PXE
- Uses VNC server/viewer

```
# virt-install \
   --network network:default \ 
   --name rhel5support --ram=756\ 
   --file=/var/lib/libvirt/images/rhel5support.img \ 
   --file-size=6 --vnc --cdrom=/dev/sr0
```

Refer to `man virt-install` for more examples.

6.3. Creating guests with virt-manager

`virt-manager`, also known as Virtual Machine Manager, is a graphical tool for creating and managing virtualized guests.

Procedure 6.1. Creating a virtualized guest with `virt-manager`

1. **Open virt-manager**
   Start `virt-manager`. Launch the Virtual Machine Manager application from the Applications menu and System Tools submenu. Alternatively, run the `virt-manager` command as root.

2. **Optional: Open a remote hypervisor**
   Refer to Section 31.5, “Adding a remote connection”
   Select the hypervisor and press the Connect button to connect to the remote hypervisor.

3. **Create a new guest**
   The `virt-manager` window allows you to create a new virtual machine. Click the New button (Figure 6.1, “Virtual Machine Manager window”) to open the New VM wizard.
Creating guests with virt-manager

4. **New VM wizard**
   The New VM wizard breaks down the guest creation process into five steps:
   
   1. Naming the guest and choosing the installation type
   2. Locating and configuring the installation media
   3. Configuring memory and CPU options
   4. Configuring the guest’s storage
   5. Configuring networking, hypervisor type, architecture, and other hardware settings

   Ensure that **virt-manager** can access the installation media (whether locally or over the network).

5. **Specify name and installation type**
   The guest creation process starts with the selection of a name and installation type. Virtual machine names can have underscores (_), periods (.), and hyphens (-).
Type in a virtual machine name and choose an installation type:

Local install media (ISO image or CDROM)
   This method uses a CD-ROM, DVD, or image of an installation disk (e.g. .iso).

Network Install (HTTP, FTP, or NFS)
   Network installing involves the use of a mirrored Red Hat Enterprise Linux or Fedora installation tree to install a guest. The installation tree must be accessible through either HTTP, FTP, or NFS.
Creating guests with virt-manager

Network Boot (PXE)
This method uses a Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE) server to install the guest. Setting up a PXE server is covered in the Deployment Guide. To install via network boot, the guest must have a routable IP address or shared network device. For information on the required networking configuration for PXE installation, refer to Chapter 10, Network Configuration.

Import existing disk image
This method allows you to create a new guest and import a disk image (containing a pre-installed, bootable operating system) to it.

Click Forward to continue.

6. **Configure installation**
Next, configure the OS type and Version of the installation. Except for network booting, this step also requires further configuration (depending on your chosen installation method). When using local install media or importing an existing disk image, you need to specify the location of the installation media or disk image.
Chapter 6. Virtualized guest installation overview

Figure 6.4. Import existing disk image (configuration)

It is recommend that you use the default directory for virtual machine images, `/var/lib/libvirt/images/`. If you are using a different location, make sure it is added to your SELinux policy and relabeled before you continue with the installation. Refer to Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization” for details on how to do this.

When performing a network install, you need to specify the URL of the installation tree. You can also specify the URL of any kickstart files you want to use, along with any kernel options you want to pass during installation.
Click **Forward** to continue.

7. **Configure CPU and memory**
   The next step involves configuring the number of CPUs and amount of memory to allocate to the virtual machine. The wizard shows the number of CPUs and amount of memory you can allocate; configure these settings and click **Forward**.
8. **Configure storage**
   Assign a physical storage device (Block device) or a file-based image (File). File-based images should be stored in `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` to satisfy default SELinux permissions.
Creating guests with virt-manager

Figure 6.7. Configuring virtual storage

If you chose to import an existing disk image during the first step, **virt-manager** will skip this step.

Assign sufficient space for your virtualized guest and any applications the guest requires, then click **Forward** to continue.

9. **Final configuration**
Verify the settings of the virtual machine and click **Finish** when you are satisfied; doing so will create the guest with default networking settings, virtualization type, and architecture.
If you prefer to further configure the virtual machine's hardware first, check the Customize configuration before install box first before clicking Finish. Doing so will open another wizard Figure 6.9, “Virtual hardware configuration” that will allow you to add, remove, and configure the virtual machine's hardware settings.
After configuring the virtual machine’s hardware, click **Apply**. `virt-manager` will then create the guest with your specified hardware settings.

This concludes the general process for creating guests with `virt-manager`. Chapter 6, Virtualized guest installation overview contains step-by-step instructions to installing a variety of common operating systems.

### 6.4. Installing guests with PXE

This section covers the steps required to install guests with PXE. PXE guest installation requires a shared network device, also known as a network bridge. The procedures below covers creating a bridge and the steps required to utilize the bridge for PXE installation.

1. **Create a new bridge**
      This example creates a file named `ifcfg-installation` which makes a bridge named `installation`.

```bash
# cd /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/
# vim ifcfg-installation
DEVICE=installation
```
b. Start the new bridge by restarting the network service. The `ifup installation` command can start the individual bridge but it is safer to test the entire network restarts properly.

```bash
# service network restart
```

c. There are no interfaces added to the new bridge yet. Use the `brctl show` command to view details about network bridges on the system.

```bash
# brctl show
bridge name     bridge id               STP enabled     interfaces
installation    8000.000000000000       no              
virbr0          8000.000000000000       yes
```

The `virbr0` bridge is the default bridge used by `libvirt` for Network Address Translation (NAT) on the default Ethernet device.

2. **Add an interface to the new bridge**

Edit the configuration file for the interface. Add the `BRIDGE` parameter to the configuration file with the name of the bridge created in the previous steps.

```bash
# Intel Corporation Gigabit Network Connection
DEVICE=eth1
BRIDGE=installation
BOOTPROTO=dhcp
HWADDR=00:13:20:F7:6E:8E
ONBOOT=yes
```

After editing the configuration file, restart networking or reboot.

```bash
# service network restart
```

Verify the interface is attached with the `brctl show` command:

```bash
# brctl show
bridge name     bridge id               STP enabled     interfaces
installation    8000.001320f76e8e       no              eth1
virbr0          8000.000000000000       yes
```

3. **Security configuration**

Configure `iptables` to allow all traffic to be forwarded across the bridge.

```bash
# iptables -I FORWARD -m physdev --physdev-is-bridged -j ACCEPT
# service iptables save
```
Installing guests with PXE

Disable iptables on bridges

Alternatively, prevent bridged traffic from being processed by `iptables` rules. In `/etc/sysctl.conf` append the following lines:

```
net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-ip6tables = 0
net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables = 0
net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-arptables = 0
```

Reload the kernel parameters configured with `sysctl`.

```
# sysctl -p /etc/sysctl.conf
```

4. **Restart libvirt before the installation**

   Restart the `libvirt` daemon.

   ```
   # service libvirtd reload
   ```

   The bridge is configured, you can now begin an installation.

**PXE installation with virt-install**

For `virt-install` append the `--network=bridge:installation` installation parameter where `installation` is the name of your bridge. For PXE installations use the `--pxe` parameter.

```
Example 6.2. PXE installation with virt-install
```

```
# virt-install --hvm --connect qemu:///system \
--network=bridge:installation --pxe\ 
--name EL10 --ram=756 \ 
--vcpus=4 \ 
--os-type=linux --os-variant=rhel5 \ 
--file=/var/lib/libvirt/images/EL10.img \ 
```

**PXE installation with virt-manager**

The steps below are the steps that vary from the standard `virt-manager` installation procedures.

1. **Select PXE**

   Select PXE as the installation method.
2. **Select the bridge**

   Select *Shared physical device* and select the bridge created in the previous procedure.
3. **Start the installation**
   The installation is ready to start.
A DHCP request is sent and if a valid PXE server is found the guest installation processes will start.
Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest

This Chapter covers how to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a fully virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

This procedure assumes that the KVM hypervisor and all other required packages are installed and the host is configured for virtualization. For more information on installing the virtualization packages, refer to Chapter 5, Installing the virtualization packages.

7.1. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with local installation media

This procedure covers creating a virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with a locally stored installation DVD or DVD image. DVD images are available from [rhn.redhat.com] for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

Procedure 7.1. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with virt-manager

1. Optional: Preparation
   Prepare the storage environment for the virtualized guest. For more information on preparing storage, refer to Part V, “Virtualization storage topics”.

   **Note**

   Various storage types may be used for storing virtualized guests. However, for a guest to be able to use migration features the guest must be created on networked storage.

   Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 requires at least 1GB of storage space. However, Red Hat recommends at least 5GB of storage space for a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 installation and for the procedures in this guide.

2. Open virt-manager and start the wizard
   Open virt-manager by executing the virt-manager command as root or opening Applications -> System Tools -> Virtual Machine Manager.
Figure 7.1. The main virt-manager window

Press the **create new virtualized guest button** (see figure Figure 7.2, "The create new virtualized guest button") to start the new virtualized guest wizard.

Figure 7.2. The create new virtualized guest button

The **Create a new virtual machine** window opens.

3. **Name the virtualized guest**
   Guest names can contain letters, numbers and the following characters: '_' , '.' and '-' . Guest names must be unique for migration.

   Choose the **Local install media (ISO image or CDROM)** radio button.
Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with local installation media

Figure 7.3. The Create a new virtual machine window - Step 1

Press **Forward** to continue.

4. **Select the installation media**
   Select the installation ISO image location or a DVD drive with the installation disc inside. This example uses an ISO file image of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0 installation DVD image.
Chapter 7. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest

Figure 7.4. The Locate ISO media volume window

Image files and SELinux

For ISO image files and guest storage images, the recommended directory to use is the `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` directory. Any other location may require additional configuration for SELinux, refer to Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization” for details.

Select the operating system type and version which match the installation media you have selected.
Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with local installation media

5. **Set RAM and virtual CPUs**
   Choose appropriate values for the virtualized CPUs and RAM allocation. These values affect the host's and guest's performance. Memory and virtualized CPUs can be overcommitted, for more information on overcommitting refer to *Chapter 20, Overcommitting with KVM.*

   Virtualized guests require sufficient physical memory (RAM) to run efficiently and effectively. Red Hat supports a minimum of 512MB of RAM for a virtualized guest. Red Hat recommends at least 1024MB of RAM for each logical core.

   Assign sufficient virtual CPUs for the virtualized guest. If the guest runs a multithreaded application, assign the number of virtualized CPUs the guest will require to run efficiently.

   You cannot assign more virtual CPUs than there are physical processors (or hyper-threads) available on the host system. The number of virtual CPUs available is noted in the **Up to X available** field.
Chapter 7. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest

Press **Forward** to continue.

6. **Storage**
   Enable and assign storage for the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest. Assign at least 5GB for a desktop installation or at least 1GB for a minimal installation.

   ![Image of Create a new virtual machine window - Step 3](https://example.com/image)
   
   **Figure 7.6. The Create a new virtual machine window - Step 3**

   a. **With the default local storage**
      Select the **Create a disk image on the computer's hard drive** radio button to create a file-based image in the default storage pool, the `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` directory. Enter the size of the disk image to be created. If the **Allocate entire disk now** check box is selected, a disk image of the size specified will be created immediately. If not, the disk image will grow as it becomes filled.

   Migration

   Live and offline migrations require guests to be installed on shared network storage. For information on setting up shared storage for guests refer to **Part V, "Virtualization storage topics"**.
b. **With a storage pool**
   Select **Select managed or other existing storage** to use a storage pool.
Chapter 7. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest

Figure 7.8. The Locate or create storage volume window

i. Press the browse button to open the storage pool browser.

ii. Select a storage pool from the Storage Pools list.

iii. Optional: Press the New Volume button to create a new storage volume. Enter the name of the new storage volume.

iv. Press the Choose Volume button to select the volume for the virtualized guest.
Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with local installation media

Press **Forward** to continue.

7. **Verify and finish**
Verify there were no errors made during the wizard and everything appears as expected.

   Select the **Customize configuration before install** check box to change the guest's storage or network devices, to use the para-virtualized drivers or, to add additional devices.

   Press the Advanced options down arrow to inspect and modify advanced options. For a standard Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 none of these options require modification.
Chapter 7. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a virtualized guest

Figure 7.10. The Create a new virtual machine window - Step 5

Press **Finish** to continue into the Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation sequence. For more information on installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 *Installation Guide*.

A Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest is now created from a an ISO installation disc image.
7.2. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with a network installation tree

Procedure 7.2. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with virt-manager

1. **Optional: Preparation**
   Prepare the storage environment for the virtualized guest. For more information on preparing storage, refer to *Part V, “Virtualization storage topics”*.  

   **Note**

   Various storage types may be used for storing virtualized guests. However, for a guest to be able to use migration features the guest must be created on networked storage.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 requires at least 1GB of storage space. However, Red Hat recommends at least 5GB of storage space for a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 installation and for the procedures in this guide.

2. **Open virt-manager and start the wizard**
   Open virt-manager by executing the virt-manager command as root or opening **Applications -> System Tools -> Virtual Machine Manager**.
Press the `create new virtualized guest button` (see figure Figure 7.12, “The create new virtualized guest button”) to start the new virtualized guest wizard.

3. **Name the virtualized guest**
   Guest names can contain letters, numbers and the following characters: `_`, `'` and `-`. Guest names must be unique for migration.

   Choose the installation method from the list of radio buttons.
7.3. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with PXE

Procedure 7.3. Creating a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with virt-manager

1. **Optional: Preparation**
   Prepare the storage environment for the virtualized guest. For more information on preparing storage, refer to *Part V, “Virtualization storage topics”.*

   **Note**

   Various storage types may be used for storing virtualized guests. However, for a guest to be able to use migration features the guest must be created on networked storage.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 requires at least 1GB of storage space. However, Red Hat recommends at least 5GB of storage space for a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 installation and for the procedures in this guide.
2. **Open virt-manager and start the wizard**  
Open virt-manager by executing the virt-manager command as root or opening **Applications -> System Tools -> Virtual Machine Manager**.

![Virtual Machine Manager](image)

**Figure 7.14. The main virt-manager window**

Press the **create new virtualized guest button** (see figure **Figure 7.15, “The create new virtualized guest button”**) to start the new virtualized guest wizard.

![Create new virtualized guest button](image)

**Figure 7.15. The create new virtualized guest button**

The **Create a new virtual machine** window opens.

3. **Name the virtualized guest**  
Guest names can contain letters, numbers and the following characters: `_`, `'`, and `-`. Guest names must be unique for migration.
Choose the installation method from the list of radio buttons.

Choose how you would like to install the operating system

- Local install media (ISO image or CDROM)
- Network Install (HTTP, FTP, or NFS)
- Network Boot (PXE)
- Import existing disk image

Press Forward to continue.

Figure 7.16. The Create a new virtual machine window - Step 1
Chapter 8.

Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5

This section describes how to install Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5. Para-virtualization is only available for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 hosts. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 uses the PV-opts features of the Linux kernel to appear as a compatible Xen para-virtualized guest.

**Important note on para-virtualization**

Para-virtualization only works with the Xen hypervisor. Para-virtualization does not work with the KVM hypervisor. This procedure is for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4 or newer.

8.1. Using virt-install

This section covers creating a para-virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 host using the `virt-install` command. For instructions on `virt-manager`, refer to the procedure in Section 8.2, “Using virt-manager”.

This method installs Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 from a remote server hosting the network installation tree. The installation instructions presented in this section are similar to installing from the minimal installation live CD-ROM.

**Automating with virt-install**

Guests can be created with the command line `virt-install` tool. The `--vnc` option shows the graphical installation. The name of the guest in the example is `rhel6PV`, the disk image file is `rhel6PV.img` and a local mirror of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 installation tree is `http://example.com/installation_tree/RHEL6-x86/`. Replace those values with values for your system and network.

```
# virt-install --name rhel6PV 
--disk /var/lib/libvirt/images/rhel6PV.img,size=5 
--vnc --paravirt --vcpus=2 --ram=1024 
-location=http://example.com/installation_tree/RHEL6-x86/
```

Red Hat Enterprise Linux can be installed without a graphical interface or manual input. Use a Kickstart file to automate the installation process. This example extends the previous example with a Kickstart file, located at `http://example.com/kickstart/ks.cfg`, to fully automate the installation.

```
# virt-install --name rhel6PV 
--disk /var/lib/libvirt/images/rhel6PV.img,size=5 
--nographics --paravirt --vcpus=2 --ram=1024 
-location=http://example.com/installation_tree/RHEL6-x86/ 
-x "ks=http://example.com/kickstart/ks.cfg"
```
Chapter 8. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5

The graphical console opens showing the initial boot phase of the guest:

After your guest has completed its initial boot, the standard installation process for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 starts. For most systems the default answers are acceptable.

Refer to the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Installation Guide for more information on installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

8.2. Using virt-manager

Procedure 8.1. Creating a para-virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest with virt-manager

1. Open virt-manager
   Start virt-manager. Launch the Virtual Machine Manager application from the Applications menu and System Tools submenu. Alternatively, run the virt-manager command as root.

2. Select the hypervisor
   Select the hypervisor. Note that presently the KVM hypervisor is named qemu.

   Connect to a hypervisor if you have not already done so. Open the File menu and select the Add Connection... option. Refer to Section 31.5, “Adding a remote connection”.

   Once a hypervisor connection is selected the New button becomes available. Press the New button.
3. **Start the new virtual machine wizard**
Pressing the **New** button starts the virtual machine creation wizard.

![Virtual Machine Creation](Image)

This assistant will guide you through creating a new virtual machine. You will be asked for some information about the virtual machine you’d like to create, such as:

- A **name** for your new virtual machine
- Whether the virtual machine will be **fully virtualized** or **para-virtualized**
- The **location** of the files necessary for installing an operating system on the virtual machine
- **Storage** details - which disk partitions or files the virtual machine should use
- **Memory** and **CPU** allocation

Press **Forward** to continue.

4. **Name the virtual machine**
Provide a name for your virtualized guest. The following punctuation and whitespace characters are permitted for ‘‘_’, ‘.’ and ‘-’ characters.
Chapter 8. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5

5. **Choose a virtualization method**
   Select Xen para-virtualized as the virtualization method.
Using virt-manager

6. **Select the installation method**

   Red Hat Enterprise Linux can be installed using one of the following methods:

   - **local install media**, either an ISO image or physical optical media.
   - Select **Network install tree** if you have the installation tree for Red Hat Enterprise Linux hosted somewhere on your network via HTTP, FTP or NFS.
   - PXE can be used if you have a PXE server configured for booting Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation media. Configuring a server to PXE boot a Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation is not covered by this guide. However, most of the installation steps are the same after the media boots.

   Set **OS Type** to **Linux** and **OS Variant** to **Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5** as shown in the screenshot.
Chapter 8. Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 as a para-virtualized guest on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5

7. **Locate installation media**
Select ISO image location or CD-ROM or DVD device. This example uses an ISO file image of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux installation DVD.

   a. Press the **Browse** button.

   b. Search to the location of the ISO file and select the ISO image. Press **Open** to confirm your selection.

   c. The file is selected and ready to install.
Using virt-manager

Press **Forward** to continue.

**Image files and SELinux**

For ISO image files and guest storage images it is recommended to use the `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` directory. Any other location may require additional configuration for SELinux, refer to *Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization”* for details.

8. **Storage setup**
   Assign a physical storage device (**Block device**) or a file-based image (**File**). File-based images should be stored in the `/var/lib/libvirt/images/` directory to satisfy default SELinux permissions. Assign sufficient space for your virtualized guest and any applications the guest requires.
Press **Forward** to continue.

### Migration

Live and offline migrations require guests to be installed on shared network storage. For information on setting up shared storage for guests refer to *Part V, "Virtualization storage topics".*

9. **Network setup**

Select either **Virtual network** or **Shared physical device.**

The virtual network option uses Network Address Translation (NAT) to share the default network device with the virtualized guest. Use the virtual network option for wireless networks.

The shared physical device option uses a network bond to give the virtualized guest full access to a network device.
Using virt-manager

10. **Memory and CPU allocation**

The **Memory and CPU Allocation** window displays. Choose appropriate values for the virtualized CPUs and RAM allocation. These values affect the host's and guest's performance.

Virtualized guests require sufficient physical memory (RAM) to run efficiently and effectively. Choose a memory value which suits your guest operating system and application requirements. Remember, guests use physical RAM. Running too many guests or leaving insufficient memory for the host system results in significant usage of virtual memory and swapping. Virtual memory is significantly slower which causes degraded system performance and responsiveness. Ensure you allocate sufficient memory for all guests and the host to operate effectively.

Assign sufficient virtual CPUs for the virtualized guest. If the guest runs a multithreaded application, assign the number of virtualized CPUs the guest will require to run efficiently. Do not assign more virtual CPUs than there are physical processors (or hyper-threads) available on the host system. It is possible to over allocate virtual processors, however, over allocating has a significant, negative effect on guest and host performance due to processor context switching overheads.
Memroy and CPU Allocation

**Memory:**
Please enter the memory configuration for this virtual machine. You can specify the maximum amount of memory the virtual machine should be able to use, and optionally a lower amount to grab on startup. Warning: setting virtual machine memory too high will cause out-of-memory errors in your host domain!

Total memory on host machine: 2.89 GB

- **Max memory (MB):** 1024
- **Startup memory (MB):** 1024

**CPUs:**
Please enter the number of virtual CPUs this virtual machine should start up with.

- Logical host CPUs: 4
- Maximum virtual CPUs: 16

**Tip:** For best performance, the number of virtual CPUs should be less than (or equal to) the number of physical CPUs on the host system.

Press **Forward** to continue.

11. **Verify and start guest installation**
Verify the configuration.
Using virt-manager

Press Finish to start the guest installation procedure.

12. **Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux**
Installing a fully-virtualized Windows guest

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 supports the installation of any Microsoft Windows operating system as a fully virtualized guest. This chapter describes how to create a fully virtualized guest using the command-line (`virt-install`), launch the operating system's installer inside the guest, and access the installer through `virt-viewer`.

To install a Windows operating system on the guest, use the `virt-viewer` tool. This tool allows you to display the graphical console of a virtual machine (via the VNC protocol). In doing so, `virt-viewer` allows you to install a fully virtualized guest's operating system through that operating system's installer (e.g. the Windows XP installer).

Installing a Windows operating system involves two major steps:

1. Creating the guest (using either `virt-install` or `virt-manager`)
2. Installing the Windows operating system on the guest (through `virt-viewer`)

Note that this chapter does not describe how to install a Windows operating system on a fully-virtualized guest. Rather, it only covers how to create the guest and launch the installer within the guest. For information on how to install a Windows operating system, refer to the relevant Microsoft installation documentation.

### 9.1. Using virt-install to create a guest

The `virt-install` command allows you to create a fully-virtualized guest from a terminal, i.e. without a GUI. If you prefer to use a GUI instead, refer to Section 6.3, "Creating guests with virt-manager" for instructions on how to use `virt-manager`.

**Important**

Before creating the guest, consider first if the guest needs to use KVM Windows para-virtualized drivers. If it does, keep in mind that you can do so during or after installing the Windows operating system on the guest. For more information about para-virtualized drivers, refer to Chapter 11, KVM Para-virtualized Drivers.

For instructions on how to install KVM para-virtualized drivers, refer to Section 11.2, "Installing the KVM Windows para-virtualized drivers".

It is possible to create a fully-virtualized guest with only a single command. To do so, simply run the following program (replace the values accordingly):

```
# virt-install
   --name=guest-name
   --network network=default
   --disk path=path-to-disk
   --disk size=disk-size
   --cdrom=path-to-install-disk
   --vnc --ram=1024
```

The `path-to-disk` must be a device (e.g. `/dev/sda3`) or image file (`/var/lib/libvirt/images/name.img`). It must also have enough free space to support the `disk-size`.
Important

All image files should be stored in `/var/lib/libvirt/images/`. Other directory locations for file-based images are prohibited by SELinux. If you run SELinux in enforcing mode, refer to Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization” for more information on installing guests.

You can also run `virt-install` interactively. To do so, use the `--prompt` command, as in:

```bash
# virt-install --prompt
```

Once the fully-virtualized guest is created, `virt-viewer` will launch the guest and run the operating system's installer. Refer to the relevant Microsoft installation documentation for instructions on how to install the operating system.

Important

If you are installing Windows 2003, you will need to select a different computer type before installing the operating system. As soon as `virt-viewer` launches, press F5 and refer to Section 9.2, “Installing Windows 2003” for further instructions before proceeding.

9.2. Installing Windows 2003

Windows 2003 requires a specific computer type in order to install properly on a fully-virtualized guest. This needs to be specified at the beginning of the installation process.

As soon as `virt-viewer` launches and boots the installer, press F5. If you do not press F5 at the right time you will need to restart the installation. Pressing F5 allows you to select a different HAL or Computer Type.

![Windows Setup](image)

Figure 9.1. Selecting a different HAL

Choose **Standard PC** as the **Computer Type**. Then, press Enter to continue with the installation process.
Part III. Configuration

Configuring virtualization in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

These chapters cover configuration procedures for various advanced virtualization tasks. These tasks include adding network and storage devices, enhancing security, improving performance, and using the para-virtualized drivers on fully virtualized guests.
Network Configuration

This page provides an introduction to the common networking configurations used by libvirt based applications. For additional information consult the libvirt network architecture documentation: http://libvirt.org/intro.html.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 supports the following networking setups for virtualization:

• virtual networks using Network Address Translation (NAT)
• directly allocated physical devices using PCI passthrough or SR-IOV.
• bridged networks

You must enable NAT, network bridging or directly share a physical device to allow external hosts access to network services on virtualized guests.

10.1. Network Address Translation (NAT) with libvirt

One of the most common methods for sharing network connections is to use Network Address Translation (NAT) forwarding (also know as virtual networks).

Host configuration

Every standard libvirt installation provides NAT based connectivity to virtual machines out of the box. This is the so called 'default virtual network'. Verify that it is available with the virsh net-list --all command.

```
# virsh net-list --all
Name         State    Autostart
-----------------------------
default      active    yes
```

If it is missing, the example XML configuration file can be reloaded and activated:

```
# virsh net-define /usr/share/libvirt/networks/default.xml
```

The default network is defined from /usr/share/libvirt/networks/default.xml

Mark the default network to automatically start:

```
# virsh net-autostart default
Network default marked as autostarted
```

Start the default network:

```
# virsh net-start default
Network default started
```

Once the libvirt default network is running, you will see an isolated bridge device. This device does not have any physical interfaces added. The new device uses NAT and IP forwarding to connect to outside world. Do not add new interfaces.

```
# brctl show
bridge name   bridge id       STP enabled   interfaces
virbr0        8000.000000000000  yes
```

---

75
libvirt adds iptables rules which allow traffic to and from guests attached to the virbr0 device in the INPUT, FORWARD, OUTPUT and POSTROUTING chains. libvirt then attempts to enable the ip_forward parameter. Some other applications may disable ip_forward, so the best option is to add the following to /etc/sysctl.conf.

```
net.ipv4.ip_forward = 1
```

**Guest configuration**

Once the host configuration is complete, a guest can be connected to the virtual network based on its name. To connect a guest to the 'default' virtual network, the following could be used in the XML configuration file (such as /etc/libvirtd/qemu/myguest.xml) for the guest:

```
<interface type='network'>
  <source network='default'/>
</interface>
```

**Note**

Defining a MAC address is optional. A MAC address is automatically generated if omitted. Manually setting the MAC address may be useful to maintain consistency or easy reference throughout your environment, or to avoid the very small chance of a conflict.

```
<interface type='network'>
  <source network='default'/>
  <mac address='00:16:3e:1a:b3:4a'/>
</interface>
```

### 10.2. Bridged networking with libvirt

Bridged networking (also known as physical device sharing) is used for dedicating a physical device to a virtual machine. Bridging is often used for more advanced setups and on servers with multiple network interfaces.

**Disable NetworkManager**

NetworkManager does not support bridging. NetworkManager must be disabled to use networking with the network scripts (located in the /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ directory).

```
# chkconfig NetworkManager off
# chkconfig network on
# service NetworkManager stop
# service network start
```

**Note**

Instead of turning off NetworkManager, add "NM_CONTROLLED=no" to the ifcfg-* scripts used in the examples.
**Creating the bridge**

Create or edit the following two network configuration files. These steps can be repeated (with different names) for additional network bridges.

1. **Change to the network scripts directory**
   
   Change to the `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts` directory:
   
   ```bash
   # cd /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts
   ```

2. **Modify a network interface to make a bridge**
   
   Edit the network script for the network device you are adding to the bridge. In this example, `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0` is used. This file defines `eth0`, the physical network interface which is set as part of a bridge:
   
   ```
   DEVICE=eth0
   # change the hardware address to match the hardware address your NIC uses
   HWADDR=00:16:76:D6:C9:45
   ONBOOT=yes
   BRIDGE=br0
   ```

   **Tip**

   You can configure the device’s Maximum Transfer Unit (MTU) by appending an `MTU` variable to the end of the configuration file.

   ```
   MTU=9000
   ```

3. **Create the bridge script**
   
   Create a new network script in the `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts` directory called `ifcfg-br0` or similar. The `br0` is the name of the bridge, this can be anything as long as the name of the file is the same as the `DEVICE` parameter, and that it matches the bridge name used in step 2.

   ```
   DEVICE=br0
   TYPE=Bridge
   BOOTPROTO=dhcp
   ONBOOT=yes
   DELAY=0
   ```

   **Warning**

   The line, `TYPE=Bridge`, is case-sensitive. It must have uppercase ‘B’ and lower case ‘ridge’.

4. **Restart the network**
   
   After configuring, restart networking or reboot.

   ```bash
   # service network restart
   ```
Chapter 10. Network Configuration

5. **Configure iptables**
   Configure **iptables** to allow all traffic to be forwarded across the bridge.

   ```bash
   # iptables -I FORWARD -m physdev --physdev-is-bridged -j ACCEPT
   # service iptables save
   # service iptables restart
   ```

   **Disable iptables on bridges**

   Alternatively, prevent bridged traffic from being processed by **iptables** rules. In `/etc/sysctl.conf` append the following lines:

   ```bash
   net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-ip6tables = 0
   net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-iptables = 0
   net.bridge.bridge-nf-call-arptables = 0
   ```

   Reload the kernel parameters configured with **sysctl**.

   ```bash
   # sysctl -p /etc/sysctl.conf
   ```

6. **Restart the libvirt service**

   Restart the **libvirt** service with the **service** command.

   ```bash
   # service libvirtd reload
   ```

7. **Verify the bridge**

   Verify the new bridge is available with the bridge control command (**brctl**).

   ```bash
   # brctl show
   bridge name  bridge id               STP enabled  interfaces
   virbr0        8000.000000000000  yes          
   br0           8000.000e0cb30550  no           eth0
   ```

   A "**Shared physical device**" is now available through **virt-manager** and libvirt, which guests can be attached and have full network access.

   Note, the bridge is completely independent of the **virbr0** bridge. Do not attempt to attach a physical device to **virbr0**. The **virbr0** bridge is only for Network Address Translation (NAT) connectivity.
KVM Para-virtualized Drivers

Para-virtualized drivers are available for virtualized Windows guests running on KVM hosts. These para-virtualized drivers are included in the virtio package. The virtio package supports block (storage) devices and network interface controllers.

Para-virtualized drivers enhance the performance of fully virtualized guests. With the para-virtualized drivers guest I/O latency decreases and throughput increases to near bare-metal levels. It is recommended to use the para-virtualized drivers for fully virtualized guests running I/O heavy tasks and applications.

The KVM para-virtualized drivers are automatically loaded and installed on the following:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 and newer
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4.8 and newer
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.3 and newer
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and newer
- Some versions of Linux based on the 2.6.27 kernel or newer kernel versions.

Versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux in the list above detect and install the drivers, additional installation steps are not required.

**Note**

PCI devices are limited by the virtualized system architecture. Out of the 32 available PCI devices for a guest, 4 are not removable. This means there are up to 28 free PCI slots available for additional devices per guest. Each PCI device in a guest can have up to 8 functions.

The following Microsoft Windows versions are expected to function normally using KVM para-virtualized drivers:

- Windows XP (32-bit only)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit versions)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit and 64-bit versions)
- Windows 7 (32-bit and 64-bit versions)

11.1. Using the para-virtualized drivers with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 guests

Para-virtualized drivers for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 consist of five kernel modules: **virtio**, **virtio_blk**, **virtio_net**, **virtio_pci** and **virtio_ring**. All five modules must be loaded to use both the para-virtualized block and network devices drivers.
To use the network device driver only, load the `virtio`, `virtio_net` and `virtio_pci` modules. To use the block device driver only, load the `virtio`, `virtio_ring`, `virtio_blk` and `virtio_pci` modules.

The `virtio` package modifies the initrd RAM disk file in the `/boot` directory. The original initrd file is saved to `/boot/initrd-kernel-version.img.virtio.orig`. The original initrd file is replaced with a new initrd RAM disk containing the `virtio` driver modules. The initrd RAM disk is modified to allow the guest to boot from a storage device using the para-virtualized drivers. To use a different initrd file, you must ensure that drivers are loaded with the `sysinit` script (Loading the para-virtualized drivers with the `sysinit` script) or when creating new initrd RAM disk (Adding the para-virtualized drivers to the initrd RAM disk).

### Loading the para-virtualized drivers with the `sysinit` script

This procedure covers loading the para-virtualized driver modules during the boot sequence on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 or newer guest with the `sysinit` script. Note that the guest cannot use the para-virtualized drivers for the default boot disk if the modules are loaded with the `sysinit` script.

The drivers must be loaded in the following order:

1. `virtio`
2. `virtio_ring`
3. `virtio_blk`
4. `virtio_net`
5. `virtio_pci`

Only order of `virtio_net` and `virtio_blk` can be change. If the drivers are loaded in a different order, drivers will not work.

Configure the modules to . Locate the following section of the `/etc/rc.d/rc.sysinit` file.

```bash
if [ -f /etc/rc.modules ]; then
    /etc/rc.modules
fi
```

Append the following lines after that section:

```bash
if [ -f /etc/rc.modules ]; then
    /etc/rc.modules
fi

modprobe virtio
modprobe virtio_ring # Comment this out if you do not need block driver
modprobe virtio_blk # Comment this out if you do not need block driver
modprobe virtio_net # Comment this out if you do not need net driver
```
Using the para-virtualized drivers with Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 guests

```bash
modprobe virtio_pci
```

Reboot the guest to load the kernel modules.

**Adding the para-virtualized drivers to the initrd RAM disk**

This procedure covers loading the para-virtualized driver modules with the kernel on a Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.9 or newer guest by including the modules in the initrd RAM disk. The mkinitrd tool configures the initrd RAM disk to load the modules. Specify the additional modules with the `--with` parameter for the `mkinitrd` command. Append following set of parameters, in the exact order, when using the `mkinitrd` command to create a custom initrd RAM disk:

```bash
--with virtio --with virtio_ring --with virtio_blk --with virtio_net --with virtio_pci
```

**AMD64 and Intel 64 issues**

Use the `x86_64` version of the `virtio` package for AMD64 systems.

Use the `ia32e` version of the `virtio` package for Intel 64 systems. Using the `x86_64` version of the `virtio` may cause a 'Unresolved symbol' error during the boot sequence on Intel 64 systems.

**Network performance issues**

If you experience low performance with the para-virtualized network drivers, verify the setting for the GSO and TSO features on the host system. The para-virtualized network drivers require that the GSO and TSO options are disabled for optimal performance.

Verify the status of the GSO and TSO settings, use the command on the host (replacing `interface` with the network interface used by the guest):

```bash
# ethtool -k interface
```

Disable the GSO and TSO options with the following commands on the host:

```bash
# ethtool -K interface gso off
# ethtool -K interface tso off
```

**Para-virtualized driver swap partition issue**

After activating the para-virtualized block device driver the swap partition may not be available. This issue is may be caused by a change in disk device name. To fix this issue, open the `/etc/fstab` file and locate the lines containing swap partitions, for example:

```
/dev/hda3 swap swap defaults 0 0
```

The para-virtualized drivers use the `/dev/vd*` naming convention, not the `/dev/hd*` naming convention. To resolve this issue modify the incorrect swap entries in the `/etc/fstab` file to use the `/dev/vd*` convention, for the example above:

```
/dev/vda3 swap swap defaults 0 0
```

Save the changes and reboot the virtualized guest. The guest should now correctly have swap partitions.
11.2. Installing the KVM Windows para-virtualized drivers

This section covers the installation process for the KVM Windows para-virtualized drivers. The KVM para-virtualized drivers can be loaded during the Windows installation or installed after the guest is installed.

You can install the para-virtualized drivers on your guest by one of the following methods:
- hosting the installation files on a network accessible to the guest,
- using a virtualized CD-ROM device of the driver installation disk .iso file, or
- using a virtualized floppy device to install the drivers during boot time (for Windows guests).

This guide describes installation from the para-virtualized installer disk as a virtualized CD-ROM device.

1. Download the drivers

   The virtio-win package contains the para-virtualized block and network drivers for all supported Windows guests.

   Download the virtio-win package with the yum command.

   ```
   # yum install virtio-win
   ```

   The drivers are also from Microsoft (windowsservercatalog.com\(^1\)). Note that the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Hypervisor and Red Hat Enterprise Linux are created on the same code base so the drivers for the same version (for example, Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Hypervisor 2.2 and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5) are supported for both environments.


2. Install the para-virtualized drivers

   It is recommended to install the drivers on the guest before attaching or modifying a device to use the para-virtualized drivers.

   For block devices storing root file systems or other block devices required for booting the guest, the drivers must be installed before the device is modified. If the drivers are not installed on the guest and the driver is set to the virtio driver the guest will not boot.

11.2.1. Installing the drivers on an installed Windows guest

This procedure covers installing the para-virtualized drivers with a virtualized CD-ROM after Windows is installed.

Follow Procedure 11.1, “Installing from the driver CD-ROM image with virt-manager” to add a CD-ROM image with virt-manager and then install the drivers.

Procedure 11.1. Installing from the driver CD-ROM image with virt-manager

1. Open virt-manager and the guest

   Open virt-manager, select your virtualized guest from the list by double clicking the guest name.

2. Open the hardware window

   Click the blue Information button at the top to view guest details. Then click the Add Hardware button at the bottom of the window.
3. **Select the device type**
   This opens a wizard for adding the new device. Select **Storage** from the dropdown menu.
4. **Select the ISO file**

Select *Select managed or other existing storage* and set the file location of the para-virtualized drivers .iso image file. The default location for the latest version of the drivers is `/usr/share/virtio-win/virtio-win.iso`.

Change the **Device type** to `IDE cdrom` and click the **Forward** button to proceed.
Installing the drivers on an installed Windows guest

5. **Finish adding virtual hardware**
   
   Press the **Finish** button to complete the wizard.
6. **Reboot**
   
   Reboot or start the guest to begin using the driver disc. Virtualized IDE devices require a restart to
   for the guest to recognize the new device.

   Once the CD-ROM with the drivers is attached and the guest has started, proceed with
   *Procedure 11.2, “Windows installation”*.

**Procedure 11.2. Windows installation**

1. **Open My Computer**
   
   On the Windows guest, open **My Computer** and select the CD-ROM drive.
2. **Select the correct installation files**
   There are four files available on the disc. Select the drivers you require for your guest's architecture:
   
   - the para-virtualized block device driver (**RHEV-Block.msi** for 32-bit guests or **RHEV-Block64.msi** for 64-bit guests),
   
   - the para-virtualized network device driver (**RHEV-Network.msi** for 32-bit guests or **RHEV-Network64.msi** for 64-bit guests),
   
   - or both the block and network device drivers.
   
   Double click the installation files to install the drivers.

3. **Install the block device driver**
   
   a. **Start the block device driver installation**
      
      Double click **RHEV-Block.msi** or **RHEV-Block64.msi**.
b. **Confirm the exception**

Windows may prompt for a security exception.

Press **Yes** if it is correct.
c. **Finish**

![InstallShield Wizard Completed](image)

Press **Finish** to complete the installation.

4. **Install the network device driver**
   a. **Start the network device driver installation**
      Double click `RHEV-Network.msi` or `RHEV-Network64.msi`. 
b. **Performance setting**

This screen configures advanced TCP settings for the network driver. TCP timestamps and TCP window scaling can be enabled or disabled. The default is, 1, for window scaling to be enabled.

TCP window scaling is covered by *IETF RFC 1323*[^2]. The RFC defines a method of increasing the receive window size to a size greater than the default maximum of 65,535 bytes up to a new maximum of 1 gigabyte (1,073,741,824 bytes). TCP window scaling allows networks to transfer at closer to theoretical network bandwidth limits. Larger receive windows may not be supported by some networking hardware or operating systems.

TCP timestamps are also defined by *IETF RFC 1323*[^3]. TCP timestamps are used to better calculate Return Travel Time estimates by embedding timing information is embedded in packets. TCP timestamps help the system to adapt to changing traffic levels and avoid congestion issues on busy networks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Disable TCP timestamps and window scaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Enable TCP window scaling.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Enable TCP timestamps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Enable TCP timestamps and window scaling.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[^1]: [IETF RFC 1323](https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1323)

Press **Next** to continue.
Installing the drivers on an installed Windows guest

Press Next to continue.

c. **Confirm the exception**
   Windows may prompt for a security exception.

Press Yes if it is correct.
d. Finish

Press Finish to complete the installation.

5. Reboot
Reboot the guest to complete the driver installation.

Change an existing device to use the para-virtualized drivers (Section 11.3, “Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for existing devices”) or install a new device using the para-virtualized drivers (Section 11.4, “Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for new devices”).

11.2.2. Installing drivers during the Windows installation
This procedure covers installing the para-virtualized drivers during a Windows installation.

This method allows a Windows guest to use the para-virtualized (virtio) drivers for the default storage device.

1. Install the virtio-win package:

   # yum install virtio-win

Creating guests

Create the guest, as normal, without starting the guest. Follow one of the procedures below.
2. Creating the guest with virsh
   This method attaches the para-virtualized driver floppy disk to a Windows guest before the installation.

   If the guest is created from an XML definition file with virsh use the virsh define command not the virsh create command.

   a. Create, but do not start, the guest. Refer to Chapter 30, Managing guests with virsh for details on creating guests with the virsh command.

   b. Add the driver disk as a virtualized floppy disk with the virsh command. This example can be copied and used if there are no other virtualized floppy devices attached to the virtualized guest.

   ```
   # virsh attach-disk guest1 /usr/share/virtio-win/virtio-drivers.vfd fda --type floppy
   ```

3. Creating the guest with virt-manager
   a. At the final step of the virt-manager guest creation wizard, check the Customize configuration before install checkbox.
b. Add the new device
Select Storage from the Hardware type list. Click Forward to continue.
c. **Select the driver disk**
Select Select managed or existing storage.

Set the location to `/usr/share/virtio-win/virtio-drivers.vfd`.

Change **Device type** to **Floppy disk**.
**Chapter 11. KVM Para-virtualized Drivers**

Press the **Forward** button to continue.

d. **Confirm the new device**

   Click the **Finish** button to confirm the device setup and add the device to the guest.
4. **Creating the guest with virt-install**
   Append the following parameter exactly as listed below to add the driver disk to the installation with the `virt-install` command:

   ```
   --disk path=/usr/share/virtio-win/virtio-drivers.vfd,device=floppy
   ```

5. During the installation, additional steps are required to install drivers, depending on the type of Windows guest.
   a. **Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP**
      Before the installation blue screen repeatedly press **F6** for third party drivers.
Press S to install additional

Windows Setup

Setup could not determine the type of one or more mass storage devices installed in your system, or you have chosen to manually specify an adapter. Currently, Setup will load support for the following mass storage device(s):

<none>

* To specify additional SCSI adapters, CD-ROM drives, or special disk controllers for use with Windows, including those for which you have a device support disk from a mass storage device manufacturer, press S.

* If you do not have any device support disks from a mass storage device manufacturer, or do not want to specify additional mass storage devices for use with Windows, press ENTER.

S=Specify Additional Device  ENTER=Continue  F3=Exit
11.3. Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for existing devices

You can modify an existing hard disk device attached to the guest to use the *virtio* driver instead of the virtualized IDE driver. This example edits libvirt configuration files. Alternatively, *virt-manager*, *virsh attach-disk* or *virsh attach-interface* can add a new device using the para-virtualized drivers Section 11.4, "Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for new devices". Note that the guest does not need to be shut down to perform these steps, however the change will not be applied until the guest is completely shut down and rebooted.

1. Run the *virsh edit* `<guestname>` command to edit the XML configuration file for your device. For example, *virsh edit guest1*. The configuration files are located in `/etc/libvirt/qemu`.

2. Below is a file-based block device using the virtualized IDE driver. This is a typical entry for a virtualized guest not using the para-virtualized drivers.

   ```xml
   <disk type='file' device='disk'>
       <source file='/var/lib/libvirt/images/disk1.img'/>
       <target dev='hda' bus='ide'/>
   </disk>
   ```

3. Change the entry to use the para-virtualized device by modifying the *bus= entry to virtio*. Note that if the disk was previously IDE it will have a target similar to hda, hdb, or hdc and so on. When changing to *bus=virtual* the target needs to be changed to vda, vdb, or vdc accordingly.

   ```xml
   <disk type='file' device='disk'>
   ```
4. Remove the **address** tag inside the **disk** tags. This must be done for this procedure to work. Libvirt will regenerate the **address** tag appropriately the next time the guest is started.

Please refer to the libvirt wiki: [http://wiki.libvirt.org/page/Virtio](http://wiki.libvirt.org/page/Virtio) for more details on using Virtio.

### 11.4. Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for new devices

This procedure covers creating new devices using the KVM para-virtualized drivers with **virt-manager**.

Alternatively, the **virsh attach-disk** or **virsh attach-interface** commands can be used to attach devices using the para-virtualized drivers.

**Install the drivers first**

Ensure the drivers have been installed on the Windows guest before proceeding to install new devices. If the drivers are unavailable the device will not be recognized and will not work.

---

**Procedure 11.3. Starting the new device wizard**

1. Open the virtualized guest by double clicking on the name of the guest in **virt-manager**.

2. Open the **Information** tab by pressing the **i** information button.

   ![Figure 11.1. The information tab button](image)

3. In the information tab, press the **Add Hardware** button.

4. In the Adding Virtual Hardware tab select **Storage** or **Network** for the type of device. The storage and network device wizards are covered in procedures **Procedure 11.4, “Adding a storage device using the para-virtualized storage driver”** and **Procedure 11.5, “Adding a network device using the para-virtualized network driver”**

**Procedure 11.4. Adding a storage device using the para-virtualized storage driver**

1. **Select hardware type**
   Select **Storage** as the **Hardware type**.
2. **Select the storage device and driver**
Create a new disk image or select a storage pool volume.

Set the **Device type** to **Virtio Disk** to use the para-virtualized drivers.
Chapter 11. KVM Para-virtualized Drivers

3. **Finish the procedure**
   Confirm the details for the new device are correct.
Using KVM para-virtualized drivers for new devices

Press Finish to complete the procedure.

Procedure 11.5. Adding a network device using the para-virtualized network driver

1. Select hardware type
   Select Network as the Hardware type.
Press **Forward** to continue.

2. **Select the network device and driver**
   Select the network device from the **Host device** list.

   Create a custom MAC address or use the one provided.

   Set the **Device model** to **virtio** to use the para-virtualized drivers.
3. Finish the procedure
   Confirm the details for the new device are correct.
Chapter 11. KVM Para-virtualized Drivers

Press Finish to complete the procedure.

Once all new devices are added, reboot the guest. Windows guests may not recognise the devices until the guest is rebooted.
PCI passthrough

This chapter covers using PCI passthrough with KVM.

Certain hardware platforms allow virtualized guests to directly access various hardware devices and components. This process in virtualization is known as *passthrough*. Passthrough is known as *device assignment* in some of the KVM documentation and the KVM code.

The KVM hypervisor supports attaching PCI devices on the host system to virtualized guests. PCI passthrough allows guests to have exclusive access to PCI devices for a range of tasks. PCI passthrough allows PCI devices to appear and behave as if they were physically attached to the guest operating system. PCI passthrough can improve the I/O performance of devices attached to virtualized guests.

Almost all PCI and PCI Express devices that support passthrough, except for graphics cards, can be directly attached to virtualized guests with PCI passthrough.

PCI passthrough is only available on hardware platforms supporting either Intel VT-d or AMD IOMMU. These Intel VT-d or AMD IOMMU extensions must be enabled in BIOS for PCI passthrough to function.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.0 and newer supports hot plugging PCI passthrough devices into virtualized guests.

Out of the 32 available PCI devices for a guest 4 are not removable. This means there are only 28 PCI slots available for additional devices per guest. Every para-virtualized network or block device uses one slot. Each guest can use up to 28 additional devices made up of any combination of para-virtualized network, para-virtualized disk devices, or other PCI devices using VT-d.

Procedure 12.1. Preparing an Intel system for PCI passthrough

1. **Enable the Intel VT-d extensions**
   The Intel VT-d extensions provides hardware support for directly assigning a physical devices to guest.

   The VT-d extensions are required for PCI passthrough with Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The extensions must be enabled in the BIOS. Some system manufacturers disable these extensions by default.

   These extensions are often called various terms in BIOS which differ from manufacturer to manufacturer. Consult your system manufacturer's documentation.

2. **Activate Intel VT-d in the kernel**
   Activate Intel VT-d in the kernel by appending the *intel_iommu=on* parameter to the kernel line of the kernel line in the `/boot/grub/grub.conf` file.

   The example below is a modified `grub.conf` file with Intel VT-d activated.

   ```plaintext
   default=0
timeout=5
splashimage=(hd0,0)/grub/splash.xpm.gz
hiddenmenu
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (2.6.32-36.x86-64)
   root (hd0,0)
   kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-36.x86-64 ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00 rhgb
   quiet intel_iommu=on
   initrd /initrd-2.6.32-36.x86-64.img
   ```
3. **Ready to use**
   Reboot the system to enable the changes. Your system is now PCI passthrough capable.

---

### Procedure 12.2. Preparing an AMD system for PCI passthrough

- **Enable AMD IOMMU extensions**
  The AMD IOMMU extensions are required for PCI passthrough with Red Hat Enterprise Linux. The extensions must be enabled in the BIOS. Some system manufacturers disable these extensions by default.

AMD systems only require that the IOMMU is enabled in the BIOS. The system is ready for PCI passthrough once the IOMMU is enabled.

---

### 12.1. Adding a PCI device with virsh

These steps cover adding a PCI device to a virtualized guest on a KVM hypervisor using hardware-assisted PCI passthrough.

This example uses a USB controller device with the PCI identifier code, `pci_8086_3a6c`, and a fully virtualized guest named `win2k3`.

1. **Identify the device**
   Identify the PCI device designated for passthrough to the guest. The `virsh nodedev-list` command lists all devices attached to the system. The `-tree` option is useful for identifying devices attached to the PCI device (for example, disk controllers and USB controllers).

   ```bash
   # virsh nodedev-list --tree
   ```
   
   For a list of only PCI devices, run the following command:

   ```bash
   # virsh nodedev-list | grep pci
   ```
   
   In the output from this command, each PCI device is identified by a string, as shown in the following example output:

   ```
   pci_0000_00_00_0
   pci_0000_00_02_0
   pci_0000_00_02_1
   pci_0000_00_03_0
   pci_0000_00_03_2
   pci_0000_00_03_3
   pci_0000_00_19_0
   pci_0000_00_1a_0
   pci_0000_00_1a_1
   pci_0000_00_1a_2
   pci_0000_00_1a_7
   pci_0000_00_1b_0
   pci_0000_00_1c_0
   ```

---

**Tip: determining the PCI device**

Comparing `lspci` output to `lspci -n` (which turns off name resolution) output can assist in deriving which device has which device identifier code.
Adding a PCI device with virsh

Record the PCI device number; the number is needed in other steps.

2. Information on the domain, bus and function are available from output of the `virsh nodedev-dumpxml` command:

```xml
# virsh nodedev-dumpxml pci_8086_3a6c
<device>
  <name>pci_8086_3a6c</name>
  <parent>computer</parent>
  <capability type='pci'>
    <domain>0</domain>
    <bus>0</bus>
    <slot>26</slot>
    <function>7</function>
    <id='0x3a6c'>82801JD/DO (ICH10 Family) USB2 EHCI Controller #2</id>
    <vendor id='0x8086'>Intel Corporation</vendor>
  </capability>
</device>
```

3. Detach the device from the system. Attached devices cannot be used and may cause various errors if connected to a guest without detaching first.

```bash
# virsh nodedev-dettach pci_8086_3a6c
Device pci_8086_3a6c detached
```

4. Convert slot and function values to hexadecimal values (from decimal) to get the PCI bus addresses. Append "0x" to the beginning of the output to tell the computer that the value is a hexadecimal number.

For example, if bus = 0, slot = 26 and function = 7 run the following:

```bash
$ printf %x 0
0
$ printf %x 26
1a
$ printf %x 7
7
```

The values to use:

```bash
bus='0x00'
slot='0x1a'
function='0x7'
```

5. Run `virsh edit` (or `virsh attach device`) and added a device entry in the `<devices>` section to attach the PCI device to the guest.

```xml
# virsh edit win2k3
<hostdev mode='subsystem' type='pci' managed='yes'>
  <source>
    <address domain='0x0000' bus='0x00' slot='0x1a' function='0x7'/>
  </source>
</hostdev>
```

6. Once the guest system is configured to use the PCI address, the host system must be configured to stop using the device. The `ehci` driver is loaded by default for the USB PCI controller.
Chapter 12. PCI passthrough

$ readlink /sys/bus/pci/devices/0000:00:1a.7/driver
../../bus/pci/drivers/ehci_hcd

7. Detach the device:

$ virsh nodedev-dettach pci_8086_3a6c

8. Verify it is now under the control of pci_stub:

$ readlink /sys/bus/pci/devices/0000:00:1d.7/driver
../../bus/pci/drivers/pci-stub

9. Set a sebool to allow the management of the PCI device from the guest:

$ setsebool -P virt_manage_sysfs 1

10. Start the guest system:

# virsh start win2k3

The PCI device should now be successfully attached to the guest and accessible to the guest operating system.

12.2. Adding a PCI device with virt-manager

PCI devices can be added to guests using the graphical **virt-manager** tool. The following procedure adds a 2 port USB controller to a virtualized guest.

1. **Identify the device**

Identify the PCI device designated for passthrough to the guest. The **virsh nodedev-list** command lists all devices attached to the system. The **--tree** option is useful for identifying devices attached to the PCI device (for example, disk controllers and USB controllers).

    # virsh nodedev-list --tree

For a list of only PCI devices, run the following command:

    # virsh nodedev-list | grep pci

In the output from this command, each PCI device is identified by a string, as shown in the following example output:

    pci_0000_00_00_0
    pci_0000_00_02_0
    pci_0000_00_02_1
    pci_0000_00_03_0
    pci_0000_00_03_2
    pci_0000_00_03_3
    pci_0000_00_19_0
    pci_0000_00_1a_0
    pci_0000_00_1a_1
    pci_0000_00_1a_2

110
Adding a PCI device with virt-manager

**Tip: determining the PCI device**

Comparing `lspci` output to `lspci -n` (which turns off name resolution) output can assist in deriving which device has which device identifier code.

Record the PCI device number; the number is needed in other steps.

2. **Detach the PCI device**
   - Detach the device from the system.

   ```bash
   # virsh nodedev-dettach pci_8086_3a6c
   Device pci_8086_3a6c detached
   ``

3. **Open the hardware settings**
   - Open the virtual machine and click the **Add Hardware** button to add a new device to the guest.
4. **Add the new device**
   Select Physical Host Device from the Hardware type list. Click Forward to continue.

5. **Select a PCI device**
   Select an unused PCI device. Note that selecting PCI devices presently in use on the host causes errors. In this example a PCI to USB interface device is used.
6. **Confirm the new device**
   Click the **Finish** button to confirm the device setup and add the device to the guest.
The setup is complete and the guest can now use the PCI device.

12.3. PCI passthrough with virt-install
To use PCI passthrough with the virt-install parameter, use the additional --host-device parameter.

1. Identify the PCI device
Identify the PCI device designated for passthrough to the guest. The virsh nodedev-list command lists all devices attached to the system. The --tree option is useful for identifying devices attached to the PCI device (for example, disk controllers and USB controllers).

```
# virsh nodedev-list --tree
```

For a list of only PCI devices, run the following command:

```
# virsh nodedev-list | grep pci
```

In the output from this command, each PCI device is identified by a string, as shown in the following example output:

```
pci_0000_00_00_0
```
PCI passthrough with virt-install

```
pci_0000_00_02_0
pci_0000_00_02_1
pci_0000_00_03_0
pci_0000_00_03_2
pci_0000_00_03_3
pci_0000_00_19_0
pci_0000_00_1a_0
pci_0000_00_1a_1
pci_0000_00_1a_2
pci_0000_00_1a_7
pci_0000_00_1b_0
pci_0000_00_1c_0
```

Tip: determining the PCI device

Comparing `lspci` output to `lspci -n` (which turns off name resolution) output can assist in deriving which device has which device identifier code.

2. **Add the device**

Use the PCI identifier output from the `virsh nodedev` command as the value for the `--host-device` parameter.

```
# virt-install \
  -n hostdev-test -r 1024 --vcpus 2 \
  --os-variant fedora11 -v \
  -l http://download.fedoraproject.org/pub/fedora/linux/development/x86_64/os \
  -x 'console=ttyS0 vnc' --nonetworks --nographics \ 
  --disk pool=default,size=8 \ 
  --debug --host-device=pci_8086_10bd
```

3. **Complete the installation**

Complete the guest installation. The PCI device should be attached to the guest.
SR-IOV

13.1. Introduction
The PCI-SIG (PCI Special Interest Group) developed the Single Root I/O Virtualization (SR-IOV) specification. The SR-IOV specification is a standard for a type of PCI passthrough which natively shares a single device to multiple guests. SR-IOV reduces hypervisor involvement by specifying virtualization compatible memory spaces, interrupts and DMA streams. SR-IOV improves device performance for virtualized guests.

SR-IOV enables a Single Root Function (for example, a single Ethernet port), to appear as multiple, separate, physical devices. A physical device with SR-IOV capabilities can be configured to appear in the PCI configuration space as multiple functions, each device has its own configuration space complete with Base Address Registers (BARs).

SR-IOV uses two new PCI functions:

- Physical Functions (PFs) are full PCIe devices that include the SR-IOV capabilities. Physical Functions are discovered, managed, and configured as normal PCI devices. Physical Functions configure and manage the SR-IOV functionality by assigning Virtual Functions.

- Virtual Functions (VFs) are simple PCIe functions that only process I/O. Each Virtual Function is derived from a Physical Function. The number of Virtual Functions a device may have is limited by the device hardware. A single Ethernet port, the Physical Device, may map to many Virtual Functions that can be shared to virtualized guests.

The hypervisor can map one or more Virtual Functions to a virtualized guest. The Virtual Function's configuration space is mapped to the configuration space presented to the virtualized guest by the hypervisor.

Each Virtual Function can only be mapped to a single guest at a time, as Virtual Functions require real hardware resources. A virtualized guest can have multiple Virtual Functions.
appears as a network card in the same way as a normal network card would appear to an operating system.

The SR-IOV drivers are implemented in the kernel. The core implementation is contained in the PCI subsystem, but there must also be driver support for both the Physical Function (PF) and Virtual Function (VF) devices. With an SR-IOV capable device one can allocate VFs from a PF. The VFs appear as PCI devices which are backed on the physical PCI device by resources (queues, and register sets).

Migrating guests with SR-IOV is possible with the `vhost-net` feature.

**Advantages of SR-IOV**

SR-IOV devices can share a single physical port with multiple virtualized guests.

Virtual Functions have near-native performance and provide better performance than para-virtualized drivers and emulated access. Virtual Functions provide data protection between virtualized guests on the same physical server as the data is managed and controlled by the hardware.

These features allow for increased virtualized guest density on hosts within a data center.

SR-IOV is better able to utilize the bandwidth of devices with multiple guests.

### 13.2. Using SR-IOV

This section covers attaching Virtual Function to a guest as an additional network device.

SR-IOV requires Intel VT-d support.

**Procedure 13.1. Attach an SR-IOV network device**

1. **Enable Intel VT-d in BIOS and in the kernel**
   
   Skip this step if Intel VT-d is already enabled and working.

   Enable Intel VT-D in BIOS if it is not enabled already. Refer to *Procedure 12.1, “Preparing an Intel system for PCI passthrough”* for procedural help on enabling Intel VT-d in BIOS and the kernel.

2. **Verify support**
   
   Verify if the PCI device with SR-IOV capabilities are detected. This example lists an Intel 82576 network interface card which supports SR-IOV. Use the `lspci` command to verify if the device was detected.

   ```
   # lspci
   03:00.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)
   03:00.1 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)
   ```

   Note that the output has been modified to remove all other devices.

3. **Start the SR-IOV kernel modules**
   
   If the device is supported the driver kernel module should be loaded automatically by the kernel. Optional parameters can be passed to the module using the `modprobe` command. The Intel 82576 network interface card uses the `igb` driver kernel module.

   ```
   # modprobe igb [<option>=<VAL1>,<VAL2>,]
   # lsmod |grep igb
   igb     87592  0
   dca     6708   1 igb
   ```
4. **Activate Virtual Functions**
   The `max_vfs` parameter of the `igb` module allocates the maximum number of Virtual Functions. The `max_vfs` parameter causes the driver to spawn, up to the value of the parameter in, Virtual Functions. For this particular card the valid range is 0 to 7.

Remove the module to change the variable.

```bash
# modprobe -r igb
```

Restart the module with the `max_vfs` set to 1 or any number of Virtual Functions up to the maximum supported by your device.

```bash
# modprobe igb max_vfs=7
```

5. **Make the Virtual Functions persistent**
   The `modprobe` command `/etc/modprobe.d/igb.conf` options `igb max_vfs=7`

6. **Inspect the new Virtual Functions**
   Using the `lspci` command, list the newly added Virtual Functions attached to the Intel 82576 network device.

```bash
# lspci | grep 8256
0b:00.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)
0b:00.1 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Gigabit Network Connection (rev 01)
0b:10.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.1 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.2 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.3 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.4 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.5 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.6 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:10.7 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.1 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.2 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.3 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.4 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
0b:11.5 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82576 Virtual Function (rev 01)
```

The identifier for the PCI device is found with the `-n` parameter of the `lspci` command. The Physical Functions corresponds to `0b:00.0` and `0b:00.1`. All the Virtual Functions have `Virtual Function` in the description.

7. **Verify devices exist with virsh**
   The `libvirt` service must recognize the device before adding a device to a guest. `libvirt` uses a similar notation to the `lspci` output. All punctuation characters, ; and ., in `lspci` output are changed to underscores (_).

   Use the `virsh nodetool-list` command and the `grep` command to filter the Intel 82576 network device from the list of available host devices. `0b` is the filter for the Intel 82576 network devices in this example. This may vary for your system and may result in additional devices.

```bash
# virsh nodetool-list | grep 0b
pci_0000_0b_00_0
pci_0000_0b_00_1
pci_0000_0b_10_0
pci_0000_0b_10_1
```
Chapter 13. SR-IOV

The serial numbers for the Virtual Functions and Physical Functions should be in the list.

8. Get device details with virsh

The `pci_0000_0b_00_0` is one of the Physical Functions and `pci_0000_0b_10_0` is the first corresponding Virtual Function for that Physical Function. Use the `virsh nodedev-dumpxml` command to get advanced output for both devices.

```
<device>
  <name>pci_0000_0b_00_0</name>
  <parent>pci_0000_00_01_0</parent>
  <driver>
    <name>igb</name>
  </driver>
  <capability type='pci'>
    <domain>0</domain>
    <bus>11</bus>
    <slot>0</slot>
    <function>0</function>
    <product id='0x10c9'>Intel Corporation</product>
    <vendor id='0x8086'>82576 Gigabit Network Connection</vendor>
  </capability>
</device>

# virsh nodedev-dumpxml pci_0000_0b_10_0
<device>
  <name>pci_0000_0b_10_0</name>
  <parent>pci_0000_00_01_0</parent>
  <driver>
    <name>igbvf</name>
  </driver>
  <capability type='pci'>
    <domain>0</domain>
    <bus>11</bus>
    <slot>16</slot>
    <function>0</function>
    <product id='0x10ca'>Intel Corporation</product>
    <vendor id='0x8086'>82576 Virtual Function</vendor>
  </capability>
</device>
```

This example adds the Virtual Function `pci_0000_0b_10_0` to the guest in Step 10. Note the `bus`, `slot` and `function` parameters of the Virtual Function, these are required for adding the device.

9. Detach the Virtual Functions

Devices attached to a host cannot be attached to guests. Red Hat Enterprise Linux automatically attaches new devices to the host. Detach the Virtual Function from the host so that the Virtual Function can be used by the guest. Detaching the Physical Function causes errors, only detach the required Virtual Functions.

```
# virsh nodedev-dettach pci_0000_0b_10_0
```
Troubleshooting SR-IOV

10. Add the Virtual Function to the guest
   a. Shut down the guest.
   b. Use the output from the `virsh nodedev-dumpxml pci_8086_10ca_0` command to calculate the values for the configuration file. Convert slot and function values to hexadecimal values (from decimal) to get the PCI bus addresses. Append “0x” to the beginning of the output to tell the computer that the value is a hexadecimal number.

   The example device has the following values: bus = 3, slot = 16 and function = 1. Use the `printf` utility to convert decimal values to hexadecimal values.

   ```
   $ printf %x 3
   3
   $ printf %x 16
   10
   $ printf %x 1
   1
   ```

   This example would use the following values in the configuration file:

   ```
   bus='0x03'
   slot='0x10'
   function='0x01'
   ```
   c. Open the XML configuration file with the `virsh edit` command. This example edits a guest named `MyGuest`.

   ```
   # virsh edit MyGuest
   ```
   d. The default text editor will open the libvirt configuration file for the guest. Add the new device to the `devices` section of the XML configuration file.

   ```
   <hostdev mode='subsystem' type='pci'>
   <source>
   <address bus='0x03' slot='0x10' function='0x01'/>
   </source>
   </hostdev>
   ```
   e. Save the configuration.

11. Restart
   Restart the guest to complete the installation.

   ```
   # virsh start MyGuest
   ```

   The guest should start successfully and detect a new network interface card. This new card is the Virtual Function of the SR-IOV device.

13.3. Troubleshooting SR-IOV
This section contains some issues and solutions for problems which may affect SR-IOV.
Chapter 13. SR-IOV

Error starting the guest
Start the configured vm, an error reported as follows:

```
# virsh start test
error: Failed to start domain test
error: internal error unable to start guest: char device redirected to /dev/pts/2
get_real_device: /sys/bus/pci/devices/0000:03:10.0/config: Permission denied
init_assigned_device: Error: Couldn't get real device (03:10.0)!
Failed to initialize assigned device host=03:10.0
```

This error is often caused by a device which is already assigned to another guest or to the host itself.
KVM guest timing management

Virtualization poses various challenges for guest time keeping. Guests using the Time Stamp Counter (TSC) as a clock source may suffer timing issues as some CPUs do not have a constant Time Stamp Counter. Guests without accurate timekeeping may have issues with some networked applications and processes as the guest will run faster or slower than the actual time and fall out of synchronization.

KVM works around this issue by providing guests with a para-virtualized clock. Alternatively, some guests may use other x86 clock sources for their timing in future versions of those operating systems.

Guests can have several problems caused by inaccurate clocks and counters:

- Clocks can fall out of synchronization with the actual time which invalidates sessions and affects networks.
- Guests with slower clocks may have issues migrating.

These problems exist on other virtualization platforms and timing should always be tested.

### NTP

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) daemon should be running on the host and the guests. Enable the `ntpd` service:

```
# service ntpd start
```

Add the `ntpd` service to the default startup sequence:

```
# chkconfig ntpd on
```

Using the `ntpd` service should minimize the affects of clock skew in all cases.

### Determining if your CPU has the constant Time Stamp Counter

Your CPU has a constant Time Stamp Counter if the `constant_tsc` flag is present. To determine if your CPU has the `constant_tsc` flag run the following command:

```
$ cat /proc/cpuinfo | grep constant_tsc
```

If any output is given your CPU has the `constant_tsc` bit. If no output is given follow the instructions below.

### Configuring hosts without a constant Time Stamp Counter

Systems without constant time stamp counters require additional configuration. Power management features interfere with accurate time keeping and must be disabled for guests to accurately keep time with KVM.

**Note**

These instructions are for AMD revision F cpus only.
Chapter 14. KVM guest timing management

If the CPU lacks the `constant_tsc` bit, disable all power management features (`BZ#513138`\(^1\)). Each system has several timers it uses to keep time. The TSC is not stable on the host, which is sometimes caused by `cpufreq` changes, deep C state, or migration to a host with a faster TSC. Deep C sleep states can stop the TSC. To prevent the kernel using deep C states append `processor.max_cstate=1` to the kernel boot options in the `grub.conf` file on the host:

```
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux (2.6.32-36.x86-64)
root (hd0,0)
kernal /vmlinuz-2.6.32-36.x86-64 ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00 rhgb quiet processor.max_cstate=1
```

Disable `cpufreq` (only necessary on hosts without the `constant_tsc`) by editing the `/etc/sysconfig/cpuspeed` configuration file and change the `MIN_SPEED` and `MAX_SPEED` variables to the highest frequency available. Valid limits can be found in the `/sys/devices/system/cpu/cpu*/cpufreq/scaling_available_frequencies` files.

Using the para-virtualized clock with Red Hat Enterprise Linux guests

For certain Red Hat Enterprise Linux guests, additional kernel parameters are required. These parameters can be set by appending them to the end of the `/kernel` line in the `/boot/grub/grub.conf` file of the guest.

The table below lists versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux and the parameters required for guests on systems without a constant Time Stamp Counter.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Red Hat Enterprise Linux</th>
<th>Additional guest kernel parameters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.0 AMD64/Intel 64 with the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td>Additional parameters are not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.0 AMD64/Intel 64 without the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td><code>notsc lpj=n</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 AMD64/Intel 64 with the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td>Additional parameters are not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 AMD64/Intel 64 without the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td><code>divider=10 notsc lpj=n</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 x86 with the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td>Additional parameters are not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5 x86 without the para-virtualized clock</td>
<td><code>divider=10 clocksource=acpi_pm lpj=n</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 AMD64/Intel 64</td>
<td><code>divider=10 notsc</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4 x86</td>
<td><code>divider=10 clocksource=acpi_pm</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 AMD64/Intel 64</td>
<td><code>divider=10 notsc</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 x86</td>
<td><code>divider=10 clocksource=acpi_pm</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8 AMD64/Intel 64</td>
<td><code>notsc divider=10</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.8 x86</td>
<td><code>clock=pmtmr divider=10</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9 AMD64/Intel 64</td>
<td>Additional parameters are not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9 x86</td>
<td>Additional parameters are not required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) [https://bugzilla.redhat.com/show_bug.cgi?id=513138](https://bugzilla.redhat.com/show_bug.cgi?id=513138)
Using the Real-Time Clock with Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP guests
Windows uses both the Real-Time Clock (RTC) and the Time Stamp Counter (TSC). For Windows guests the Real-Time Clock can be used instead of the TSC for all time sources which resolves guest timing issues.

To enable the Real-Time Clock for the PMTIMER clock source (the PMTIMER usually uses the TSC) add the following line to the Windows boot settings. Windows boot settings are stored in the boot.ini file. Add the following line to the boot.ini file:

```
/use pmtimer
```

For more information on Windows boot settings and the pmtimer option, refer to Available switch options for the Windows XP and the Windows Server 2003 Boot.ini files

Using the Real-Time Clock with Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7 guests
Windows uses both the Real-Time Clock (RTC) and the Time Stamp Counter (TSC). For Windows guests the Real-Time Clock can be used instead of the TSC for all time sources which resolves guest timing issues.

The boot.ini file is no longer used from Windows Vista and newer. Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7 use the Boot Configuration Data Editor (bcdedit.exe) to modify the Windows boot parameters.

This procedure is only required if the guest is having time keeping issues. Time keeping issues may not affect guests on all host systems.

1. Open the Windows guest.
2. Open the Accessories menu of the start menu. Right click on the Command Prompt application, select Run as Administrator.
3. Confirm the security exception, if prompted.
4. Set the boot manager to use the platform clock. This should instruct Windows to use the PM timer for the primary clock source. The system UUID ({default} in the example below) should be changed if the system UUID is different than the default boot device.

```
C:\Windows\system32>bcdedit /set {default} USEPLATFORMCLOCK on
The operation completed successfully
```

This fix should improve time keeping for Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008 and Windows 7 guests.

---

2 http://support.microsoft.com/kb/833721
Part IV. Administration

Administering virtualized systems
These chapters contain information for administering host and virtualized guests using tools included in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.
Server best practices
The following tasks and tips can assist you with securing and ensuring reliability of your Red Hat Enterprise Linux host.

• Run SELinux in enforcing mode. Set SELinux to run in enforcing mode with the `setenforce` command.
  
  ```
  # setenforce 1
  ```

• Remove or disable any unnecessary services such as AutoFS, NFS, FTP, HTTP, NIS, telnetd, sendmail and so on.

• Only add the minimum number of user accounts needed for platform management on the server and remove unnecessary user accounts.

• Avoid running any unessential applications on your host. Running applications on the host may impact virtual machine performance and can affect server stability. Any application which may crash the server will also cause all virtual machines on the server to go down.

• Use a central location for virtual machine installations and images. Virtual machine images should be stored under `/var/lib/libvirt/images/`. If you are using a different directory for your virtual machine images make sure you add the directory to your SELinux policy and relabel it before starting the installation.

• Installation sources, trees, and images should be stored in a central location, usually the location of your vsftpd server.
Security for virtualization

When deploying virtualization technologies on your corporate infrastructure, you must ensure that the host cannot be compromised. The host is a Red Hat Enterprise Linux system that manages the system, devices, memory and networks as well as all virtualized guests. If the host is insecure, all guests in the system are vulnerable. There are several ways to enhance security on systems using virtualization. You or your organization should create a Deployment Plan containing the operating specifications and specifies which services are needed on your virtualized guests and host servers as well as what support is required for these services. Here are a few security issues to consider while developing a deployment plan:

• Run only necessary services on hosts. The fewer processes and services running on the host, the higher the level of security and performance.

• Enable SELinux on the hypervisor. Read Section 16.2, “SELinux and virtualization” for more information on using SELinux and virtualization.

• Use a firewall to restrict traffic to the host. You can setup a firewall with default-reject rules that will help secure the host from attacks. It is also important to limit network-facing services.

• Do not allow normal users to access the host. The host is privileged, and granting access to unprivileged accounts may compromise the level of security.

16.1. Storage security issues

Administrators of virtualized guests can change the partitions the host boots in certain circumstances. To prevent this administrators should follow these recommendations:

The host should not use disk labels to identify file systems in the fstab file, the initrd file or used by the kernel command line. If less privileged users, especially virtualized guests, have write access to whole partitions or LVM volumes. Guests should not be given write access to whole disks or block devices (for example, /dev/sdb). Use partitions (for example, /dev/sdb1) or LVM volumes.

16.2. SELinux and virtualization

Security Enhanced Linux was developed by the NSA with assistance from the Linux community to provide stronger security for Linux. SELinux limits an attacker’s abilities and works to prevent many common security exploits such as buffer overflow attacks and privilege escalation. It is because of these benefits that all Red Hat Enterprise Linux systems should run with SELinux enabled and in enforcing mode.

SELinux prevents guest images from loading if SELinux is enabled and the images are not in the correct directory. SELinux requires that all guest images are stored in /var/lib/libvirt/images.

Adding LVM based storage with SELinux in enforcing mode

The following section is an example of adding a logical volume to a virtualized guest with SELinux enabled. These instructions also work for hard drive partitions.

Procedure 16.1. Creating and mounting a logical volume on a virtualized guest with SELinux enabled
1. Create a logical volume. This example creates a 5 gigabyte logical volume named NewVolumeName on the volume group named volumegroup.
Chapter 16. Security for virtualization

2. Format the `NewVolumeName` logical volume with a file system that supports extended attributes, such as ext3.

   ```bash
   # lvcreate -n NewVolumeName -L 5G volumegroup
   # mke2fs -j /dev/volumegroup/NewVolumeName
   ```

3. Create a new directory for mounting the new logical volume. This directory can be anywhere on your file system. It is advised not to put it in important system directories (`/etc`, `/var`, `/sys`) or in home directories (`/home` or `/root`). This example uses a directory called `/virtstorage`

   ```bash
   # mkdir /virtstorage
   ```

4. Mount the logical volume.

   ```bash
   # mount /dev/volumegroup/NewVolumeName /virtstorage
   ```

5. Set the correct SELinux type for the libvirt image folder.

   ```bash
   # semanage fcontext -a -t virt_image_t "/virtstorage(/.*)?"
   ```

   If the targeted policy is used (targeted is the default policy) the command appends a line to the `/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/files/file_contexts.local` file which makes the change persistent. The appended line may resemble this:

   ```
   /virtstorage(/.*)?    system_u:object_r:virt_image_t:s0
   ```

6. Run the command to change the type of the mount point (`/virtstorage`) and all files under it to `virt_image_t` (the `restorecon` and `setfiles` commands read the files in `/etc/selinux/targeted/contexts/files/`).

   ```bash
   # restorecon -R -v /virtstorage
   ```

**Testing new attributes**

Create a new file (using the `touch` command) on the file system.

   ```bash
   # touch /virtstorage/newfile
   ```

Verify the file has been relabeled using the following command:

   ```bash
   # sudo ls -Z /virtstorage
   -rw-------. root root system_u:object_r:virt_image_t:s0 newfile
   ```

The output shows that the new file has the correct attribute, `virt_image_t`. 
16.3. SELinux

This section contains topics to consider when using SELinux with your virtualization deployment. When you deploy system changes or add devices, you must update your SELinux policy accordingly. To configure an LVM volume for a guest, you must modify the SELinux context for the respective underlying block device and volume group.

```
# semanage fcontext -a -t virt_image _t -f -b /dev/sda2
# restorecon /dev/sda2
```

KVM and SELinux

There are several SELinux Booleans which affect KVM and libvirt. These Booleans are listed below for your convenience.

### KVM SELinux Booleans

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SELinux Boolean</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow_unconfined_qemu_transition</td>
<td>Default: off. This Boolean controls whether KVM guests can be transitioned to unconfined users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qemu_full_network</td>
<td>Default: on. This Boolean controls full network access to KVM guests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qemu_use_cifs</td>
<td>Default: on. This Boolean controls KVM's access to CIFS or Samba file systems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qemu_use_comm</td>
<td>Default: off. This Boolean controls whether KVM can access serial or parallel communications ports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qemu_use_nfs</td>
<td>Default: on. This Boolean controls KVM's access to NFS file systems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.4. Virtualization firewall information

Various ports are used for communication between virtualized guests and management utilities.

### Guest network services

Any network service on a virtualized guest must have the applicable ports open on the guest to allow external access. If a network service on a guest is firewalled it will be inaccessible. Always verify the guests network configuration first.

- ICMP requests must be accepted. ICMP packets are used for network testing. You cannot ping guests if ICMP packets are blocked.
- Port 22 should be open for SSH access and the initial installation.
- Ports 80 or 443 (depending on the security settings on the RHEV Manager) are used by the vdsm-reg service to communicate information about the host.
- Ports 5634 to 6166 are used for guest console access with the SPICE protocol.
- Ports 49152 to 49216 are used for migrations with KVM. Migration may use any port in this range depending on the number of concurrent migrations occurring.
• Enabling IP forwarding (\texttt{net.ipv4.ip_forward = 1}) is also required for shared bridges and the default bridge. Note that installing libvirt enables this variable so it will be enabled when the virtualization packages are installed unless it was manually disabled.
sVirt

sVirt is a technology included in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 that integrates SELinux and virtualization. sVirt applies Mandatory Access Control (MAC) to improve security when using virtualized guests. The main reasons for integrating these technologies are to improve security and harden the system against bugs in the hypervisor that might be used as an attack vector aimed toward the host or to another virtualized guest.

This chapter describes how sVirt integrates with virtualization technologies in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.

Non-virtualized environments

In a non-virtualized environment, hosts are separated from each other physically and each host has a self-contained environment, consisting of services such as a web server, or a DNS server. These services communicate directly to their own user space, host kernel and physical host, offering their services directly to the network. The following image represents a non-virtualized environment:

Virtualized environments

In a virtualized environment, several operating systems can run on a single host kernel and physical host. The following image represents a virtualized environment:
Chapter 17. sVirt

17.1. Security and Virtualization

When services are not virtualized, machines are physically separated. Any exploit is usually contained to the affected machine, with the obvious exception of network attacks. When services are grouped together in a virtualized environment, extra vulnerabilities emerge in the system. If there is a security flaw in the hypervisor that can be exploited by a guest instance, this guest may be able to not only attack the host, but also other guests running on that host. This is not theoretical; attacks already exist on hypervisors. These attacks can extend beyond the guest instance and could expose other guests to attack.

sVirt is an effort to isolate guests and limit their ability to launch further attacks if exploited. This is demonstrated in the following image, where an attack can not break out of the virtualized guest and extend to another host instance:

SELinux introduces a pluggable security framework for virtualized instances in its implementation of Mandatory Access Control (MAC). The sVirt framework allows guests and their resources to be uniquely labeled. Once labeled, rules can be applied which can reject access between different guests.

17.2. sVirt Labeling

Like other services under the protection of SELinux, sVirt uses process-based mechanisms and restrictions to provide an extra layer of security over guest instances. Under typical use, you should not even notice that sVirt is working in the background. This section describes the labeling features of sVirt.

As shown in the following output, when using sVirt, each virtualized guest process is labeled and runs with a dynamically generated level. Each process is isolated from other VMs with different levels:

```
# ps -eZ | grep qemu
system_u:system_r:svirt_t:s0:c87,c520 27950 ?  00:00:17 qemu-kvm
system_u:system_r:svirt_t:s0:c639,c757 27989 ? 00:00:06 qemu-system-x86
```

The actual disk images are automatically labeled to match the processes, as shown in the following output:

```
# ls -lZ /var/lib/libvirt/images/*
```
The following table outlines the different labels that can be assigned when using sVirt:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>SELinux Context</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Virtualized guest processes</td>
<td>system_u:system_r:svirt_t:MCS1</td>
<td>MCS1 is a randomly selected MCS field. Currently approximately 500,000 labels are supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualized guest images</td>
<td>system_u:object_r:svirt_image_t:MCS1</td>
<td>svirt_t processes with the same MCS fields are able to read/write these image files and devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualized guest shared read/write content</td>
<td>system_u:object_r:svirt_image_t:s0</td>
<td>All svirt_t processes are allowed to write to the svirt_image_t:s0 files and devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualized guest shared read only content</td>
<td>system_u:object_r:svirt_content_t:s0</td>
<td>All svirt_t processes are able to read files/devices with this label.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Virtualized guest images</td>
<td>system_u:object_r:virt_content_t:s0</td>
<td>System default label used when an image exits. No svirt_t virtual processes are allowed to read files/devices with this label.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also possible to perform static labeling when using sVirt. Static labels allow the administrator to select a specific label, including the MCS/MLS field, for a virtualized guest. Administrators who run statically-labeled virtualized guests are responsible for setting the correct label on the image files. The virtualized guest will always be started with that label, and the sVirt system will never modify the label of a statically-labeled virtual machine's content. This allows the sVirt component to run in an MLS environment. You can also run multiple virtualized guests with different sensitivity levels on a system, depending on your requirements.
KVM live migration

This chapter covers migrating guests running on a KVM hypervisor to another KVM host.

Migration is the term for the process of moving a virtualized guest from one host to another. Migration is a key feature of virtualization as software is completely separated from hardware. Migration is useful for:

• Load balancing - guests can be moved to hosts with lower usage when a host becomes overloaded.
• Hardware failover - when hardware devices on the host start to fail, guests can be safely relocated so the host can be powered down and repaired.
• Energy saving - guests can be redistributed to other hosts and host systems powered off to save energy and cut costs in low usage periods.
• Geographic migration - guests can be moved to another location for lower latency or in serious circumstances.

Migrations can be performed live or offline. To migrate guests the storage must be shared. Migration works by sending the guests memory to the destination host. The shared storage stores the guest’s default file system. The file system image is not sent over the network from the source host to the destination host.

An offline migration suspends the guest then moves an image of the guests memory to the destination host. The guest is resumed on the destination host and the memory the guest used on the source host is freed.

The time an offline migration takes depends on network bandwidth and latency. If the network is experiencing heavy use or low bandwidth the migration will take much longer.

A live migration keeps the guest running on the source host and begins moving the memory without stopping the guest. All modified memory pages are monitored for changes and sent to the destination while the image is sent. The memory is updated with the changed pages. The process continues until the amount of pause time allowed for the guest equals the predicted time for the final few pages to be transferred. KVM estimates the time remaining and attempts to transfer the maximum amount of page files from the source to the destination until KVM predicts the amount of remaining pages can be transferred during a very brief time while the virtualized guest is paused. The registers are loaded on the new host and the guest is then resumed on the destination host. If the guest cannot be merged (which happens when guests are under extreme loads) the guest is paused and then an offline migration is started instead.

18.1. Live migration requirements

Migrating guests requires the following:

Migration requirements
• A virtualized guest installed on shared networked storage using one of the following protocols:
  • Fibre Channel
  • iSCSI
  • NFS
  • GFS2
Chapter 18. KVM live migration

- Two or more Red Hat Enterprise Linux systems of the same version with the same updates.
- Both systems must have the appropriate ports open.
- Both systems must have identical network configurations. All bridging and network configurations must be exactly the same on both hosts.
- Shared storage must mount at the same location on source and destination systems. The mounted directory name must be identical.

Configuring network storage
Configure shared storage and install a guest on the shared storage. For shared storage instructions, refer to Part V, "Virtualization storage topics".

Alternatively, use the NFS example in Section 18.2, “Shared storage example: NFS for a simple migration”.

18.2. Shared storage example: NFS for a simple migration
This example uses NFS to share guest images with other KVM hosts. This example is not practical for large installations, this example is only for demonstrating migration techniques and small deployments. Do not use this example for migrating or running more than a few virtualized guests.

For advanced and more robust shared storage instructions, refer to Part V, "Virtualization storage topics"

1. Export your libvirt image directory
   Add the default image directory to the /etc/exports file:

   
   ```
   /var/lib/libvirt/images *.example.com(rw,no_root_squash,async)
   ```

   Change the hosts parameter as required for your environment.

2. Start NFS
   a. Install the NFS packages if they are not yet installed:

   ```
   # yum install nfs
   ```

   b. Open the ports for NFS in iptables and add NFS to the /etc/hosts.allow file.

   c. Start the NFS service:

   ```
   # service nfs start
   ```

3. Mount the shared storage on the destination
   On the destination system, mount the /var/lib/libvirt/images directory:

   ```
   # mount sourceURL:/var/lib/libvirt/images /var/lib/libvirt/images
   ```
Locations must be the same on source and destination

Whichever directory is chosen for the guests must exactly the same on host and guest. This applies to all types of shared storage. The directory must be the same or the migration will fail.

18.3. Live KVM migration with virsh

A guest can be migrated to another host with the `virsh` command. The `migrate` command accepts parameters in the following format:

```
# virsh migrate --live GuestName DestinationURL
```

The `GuestName` parameter represents the name of the guest which you want to migrate.

The `DestinationURL` parameter is the URL or hostname of the destination system. The destination system must run the same version of Red Hat Enterprise Linux, be using the same hypervisor and have `libvirt` running.

Once the command is entered you will be prompted for the root password of the destination system.

Example: live migration with virsh

This example migrates from `test1.example.com` to `test2.example.com`. Change the host names for your environment. This example migrates a virtual machine named `RHEL4test`.

This example assumes you have fully configured shared storage and meet all the prerequisites (listed here: Migration requirements).

1. Verify the guest is running

   From the source system, `test1.example.com`, verify `RHEL4test` is running:

   ```
   [root@test1 ~]# virsh list
   Id   Name           State
   ----  --------------  -------
   10    RHEL4test     running
   ```

2. Migrate the guest

   Execute the following command to live migrate the guest to the destination, `test2.example.com`. Append `/system` to the end of the destination URL to tell libvirt that you need full access.

   ```
   # virsh migrate --live RHEL4test qemu+ssh://test2.example.com/system
   ```

   Once the command is entered you will be prompted for the root password of the destination system.

3. Wait

   The migration may take some time depending on load and the size of the guest. `virsh` only reports errors. The guest continues to run on the source host until fully migrated.
Chapter 18. KVM live migration

4. Verify the guest has arrived at the destination host
From the destination system, test2.example.com, verify RHEL4test is running:

```
[root@test2 ~]# virsh list
Id Name     State
--------- ----
10 RHEL4    running
```

The live migration is now complete.

Other networking methods

Libvirt supports a variety of networking methods including TLS/SSL, unix sockets, SSH, and unencrypted TCP. Refer to Chapter 19, Remote management of virtualized guests for more information on using other methods.

18.4. Migrating with virt-manager
This section covers migrating KVM based guests with virt-manager.

1. Connect to the source and the target hosts
Connect to the source and target hosts. On the File menu, click Add Connection, the Add Connection window appears.

Enter the following details:

- **Hypervisor**: Select QEMU.
- **Connection**: Select the connection type.
- **Hostname**: Enter the hostname.

Press the Connect button.
virt-manager now displays the newly connected host in the list of available hosts.
2. **Add a storage pool to both hosts**
   Both hosts must be connected to the same storage pool. Create the storage pool on both hosts using the same network storage device. Using a storage pool ensures both servers have identical storage configurations. This procedure uses a NFS server.

   a. **Open the storage tab**
      On the *Edit* menu, click *Host Details*, the Host Details window appears.

      Click the *Storage* tab.
b. **Add a storage pool with the same NFS to the source and target hosts.**

Add a new storage pool. In the lower left corner of the window, click the + button. The Add a New Storage Pool window appears.

Enter the following details:

- **Name**: Enter the name of the storage pool.
- **Type**: Select *netfs: Network Exported Directory*.
c. **Specify storage pool details**

Enter the following details:

- **Format**: Select the storage type. This must be NFS or iSCSI for live migrations.
- **Host Name**: Enter the IP address or fully-qualified domain name of the storage server.
Migrating with virt-manager

Figure 18.5. Storage pool details

Press the **Finish** button to add the storage pool.

d. **Verify the new storage pool was added successfully**
   The new storage pool should be visible in the **Storage** tab.
Complete these steps on both hosts before proceeding.

3. **Optional: Add a volume to the storage pool**

   Add a volume to the storage pool or create a new virtualized guest on the storage pool. If your storage pool already has virtualized guests, you can skip this step.

   a. Create a new volume in the shared storage pool, click **New Volume**.

      Enter the details, then click **Create Volume**.
b. **Create a new virtualized guest on the new volume**

Create a new virtualized guest that uses the new volume. For information on creating virtualized guests, refer to *Part II, "Installation".*
Figure 18.8. New virtualized guest

The Virtual Machine window appears.
4. **Migrate the virtualized guest**

From the main virt-manager screen, right-click on the virtual machine and select **Migrate**.... The **Migrate the virtual machine** window appears.
Figure 18.10. Migrate the virtual machine

Select the destination host from the list.

Select **Migrate offline** to disable live migration and do an offline migration.

Select advanced options if required. For a standard migration, no of these settings should be modified.

Press **Migrate** to confirm and migrate the virtualized guest.
5. A status bar tracks the progress of the migration. Once the migration is complete the virtualized guest will appear in the list of virtualized guests on the destination.

![Virtual Machine Manager](image)

**Figure 18.11. Completed migration**
Remote management of virtualized guests

This section explains how to remotely manage your virtualized guests using ssh or TLS and SSL.

19.1. Remote management with SSH

The ssh package provides an encrypted network protocol which can securely send management functions to remote virtualization servers. The method described uses the libvirt management connection securely tunneled over an SSH connection to manage the remote machines. All the authentication is done using SSH public key cryptography and passwords or passphrases gathered by your local SSH agent. In addition the VNC console for each guest virtual machine is tunneled over SSH.

SSH is usually configured by default so you probably already have SSH keys setup and no extra firewall rules needed to access the management service or VNC console.

Be aware of the issues with using SSH for remotely managing your virtual machines, including:

• you require root log in access to the remote machine for managing virtual machines,

• the initial connection setup process may be slow,

• there is no standard or trivial way to revoke a user's key on all hosts or guests, and

• ssh does not scale well with larger numbers of remote machines.

Configuring password less or password managed SSH access for virt-manager

The following instructions assume you are starting from scratch and do not already have SSH keys set up. If you have SSH keys set up and copied to the other systems you can skip this procedure.

The user is important for remote management

SSH keys are user dependent. Only the user who owns the key may access that key.

virt-manager must run as the user who owns the keys to connect to the remote host. That means, if the remote systems are managed by a non-root user virt-manager must be run in unprivileged mode. If the remote systems are managed by the local root user then the SSH keys must be owned and created by root.

You cannot manage the local host as an unprivileged user with virt-manager.

1. Optional: Changing user

Change user, if required. This example uses the local root user for remotely managing the other hosts and the local host.

```
$ su -
```

2. Generating the SSH key pair

Generate a public key pair on the machine virt-manager is used. This example uses the default key location, in the ~/.ssh/ directory.
3. **Copying the keys to the remote hosts**
   Remote login without a password, or with a passphrase, requires an SSH key to be distributed to the systems being managed. Use the `ssh-copy-id` command to copy the key to root user at the system address provided (in the example, `root@example.com`).

   ```
   $ ssh-copy-id -i ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub root@example.com
   root@example.com's password:
   ```

   Now try logging into the machine, with the `ssh root@example.com` command and check in the `.ssh/authorized_keys` file to make sure unexpected keys have not been added.

   Repeat for other systems, as required.

4. **Optional: Add the passphrase to the ssh-agent**
   Add the passphrase for the SSH key to the `ssh-agent`, if required. On the local host, use the following command to add the passphrase (if there was one) to enable password-less login.

   ```
   # ssh-add ~/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
   ```

   The SSH key was added to the remote system.

**The libvirt daemon (libvirtd)**

The libvirt daemon provide an interface for managing virtual machines. You must have the libvirtd daemon installed and running on every remote host that needs managing.

```
$ ssh root@somehost
# chkconfig libvirtd on
# service libvirtd start
```

After libvirtd and SSH are configured you should be able to remotely access and manage your virtual machines. You should also be able to access your guests with VNC at this point.

**Accessing remote hosts with virt-manager**

Remote hosts can be managed with the virt-manager GUI tool. SSH keys must belong to the user executing virt-manager for password-less login to work.

1. Start virt-manager.
2. Open the **File->Add Connection** menu.
3. Input values for the hypervisor type, the connection, Connection->Remote tunnel over SSH, and enter the desired hostname, then click connection.

**19.2. Remote management over TLS and SSL**

You can manage virtual machines using TLS and SSL. TLS and SSL provides greater scalability but is more complicated than ssh (refer to **Section 19.1, "Remote management with SSH"**). TLS and SSL is the same technology used by web browsers for secure connections. The **libvirt** management connection opens a TCP port for incoming connections, which is securely encrypted and authenticated based on x509 certificates.
TLS/SSL access for virt-manager
The libvirt Wiki contains complete details on how to configure TLS/SSL access: http://wiki.libvirt.org/page/TLSSetup

To enable SSL and TLS for VNC, refer to the libvirt Wiki: http://wiki.libvirt.org/page/VNCTLSSetup. It is necessary to place the Certificate Authority Certificate, Client Certificate, and Client Certificate Private Key, in the following locations:

- The Certificate Authority Certificate should be placed in /etc/pki/CA/cacert.pem.
- The Client Certificate, signed by the CA, should be placed in either of:
  - /etc/pki/libvirt-vnc/clientcert.pem for system wide use, or
  - $HOME/.pki/libvirt-vnc/clientcert.pem for an individual user.
- The Private Key for the Client Certificate should be placed in either of:
  - /etc/pki/libvirt-vnc/private/clientkey.pem for system wide use, or
  - $HOME/.pki/libvirt-vnc/private/clientkey.pem for an individual user.

19.3. Transport modes
For remote management, libvirt supports the following transport modes:

Transport Layer Security (TLS)
Transport Layer Security TLS 1.0 (SSL 3.1) authenticated and encrypted TCP/IP socket, usually listening on a public port number. To use this you will need to generate client and server certificates. The standard port is 16514.

UNIX sockets
Unix domain sockets are only accessible on the local machine. Sockets are not encrypted, and use UNIX permissions or SELinux for authentication. The standard socket names are /var/run/libvirt/libvirt-sock and /var/run/libvirt/libvirt-sock-ro (for read-only connections).

SSH
Transported over a Secure Shell protocol (SSH) connection. Requires Netcat (the nc package) installed. The libvirt daemon (libvirtd) must be running on the remote machine. Port 22 must be open for SSH access. You should use some sort of ssh key management (for example, the ssh-agent utility) or you will be prompted for a password.

ext
The ext parameter is used for any external program which can make a connection to the remote machine by means outside the scope of libvirt. This parameter is unsupported.

tcp
Unencrypted TCP/IP socket. Not recommended for production use, this is normally disabled, but an administrator can enable it for testing or use over a trusted network. The default port is 16509.

The default transport, if no other is specified, is tls.
Remote URIs

A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) is used by virsh and libvirt to connect to a remote host. URIs can also be used with the --connect parameter for the virsh command to execute single commands or migrations on remote hosts.

libvirt URIs take the general form (content in square brackets, "["], represents optional functions):

```
driver[+transport][/[username@][hostname][:port]/][path][?extraparameters]
```

The transport method or the hostname must be provided to target an external location.

Examples of remote management parameters

- Connect to a remote KVM host named server7, using SSH transport and the SSH username ccurran.

```
qemu+ssh://ccurran@server7/
```

- Connect to a remote KVM hypervisor on the host named server7 using TLS.

```
qemu://server7/
```

- Connect to a remote KVM hypervisor on host server7 using TLS. The no_verify=1 instructs libvirt not to verify the server’s certificate.

```
qemu://server7/?no_verify=1
```

Testing examples

- Connect to the local KVM hypervisor with a non-standard UNIX socket. The full path to the Unix socket is supplied explicitly in this case.

```
qemu+unix:///system?socket=/opt/libvirt/run/libvirt/libvirt-sock
```

- Connect to the libvirt daemon with an unencrypted TCP/IP connection to the server with the IP address 10.1.1.10 on port 5000. This uses the test driver with default settings.

```
test+tcp://10.1.1.10:5000/default
```

Extra URI parameters

Extra parameters can be appended to remote URIs. The table below Table 19.1, “Extra URI parameters” covers the recognized parameters. All other parameters are ignored. Note that parameter values must be URI-escaped (that is, a question mark (?) is appended before the parameter and special characters are converted into the URI format).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Transport mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>all modes</td>
<td>The name passed to the remote virConnectOpen function. The name is normally formed by removing transport,</td>
<td>name=qemu:///system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Transport mode</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Example usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hostname, port</td>
<td>ssh and ext</td>
<td>hostname, port number, username and extra parameters from the remote URI, but in certain very complex cases it may be better to supply the name explicitly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number, username and extra parameters from the remote URI, but in certain very complex cases it may be better to supply the name explicitly.</td>
<td>command=/opt/openssh/bin/ssh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command</td>
<td>unix and ssh</td>
<td>The path to the UNIX domain socket, which overrides the default. For ssh transport, this is passed to the remote netcat command (see netcat).</td>
<td>socket=/opt/libvirt/run/libvirt/libvirt-sock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socket</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netcat</td>
<td>ssh</td>
<td>The netcat command can be used to connect to remote systems. The default netcat parameter uses the nc command. For SSH transport, libvirt constructs an SSH command using the form below:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>command -p port [-l username] hostname</td>
<td>netcat=/opt/netcat/bin/nc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no_verify</td>
<td>tls</td>
<td>If set to a non-zero value, this disables client checks of the server’s certificate. Note that to disable no_verify=1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 19. Remote management of virtualized guests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Transport mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>no_tty</td>
<td>ssh</td>
<td>If set to a non-zero value, this stops ssh from asking for a password if it cannot log in to the remote machine automatically (for using ssh-agent or similar). Use this when you do not have access to a terminal - for example in graphical programs which use libvirt.</td>
<td>no_tty=1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

server checks of the client's certificate or IP address you must change the libvirtd configuration.
Overcommitting with KVM

The KVM hypervisor supports overcommitting CPUs and overcommitting memory. Overcommitting is allocating more virtualized CPUs or memory than there are physical resources on the system. With CPU overcommit, under-utilized virtualized servers or desktops can run on fewer servers which saves power and money.

Overcommitting memory

Most operating systems and applications do not use 100% of the available RAM all the time. This behavior can be exploited with KVM. KVM can allocate more memory for virtualized guests than the host has physically available.

With KVM, virtual machines are Linux processes. Guests on the KVM hypervisor do not have dedicated blocks of physical RAM assigned to them, instead guests function as Linux processes. The Linux kernel allocates each process memory when the process requests more memory. KVM guests are allocated memory when requested by the guest operating system. The guest only requires slightly more physical memory than the virtualized operating system reports as used. The Linux kernel swaps infrequently used memory out of physical memory and into virtual memory. Swapping decreases the amount of memory required by virtualized guests.

When physical memory is completely used or a process is inactive for some time, Linux moves the process's memory to swap. Swap is usually a partition on a hard disk drive or solid state drive which Linux uses to extend virtual memory. Swap is significantly slower than RAM due to the throughput and response times of hard drives and solid state drives.

As KVM virtual machines are Linux processes, underused or idle memory of virtualized guests is moved by default to swap. The total memory used by guests can be overcommitted, which is to use more than the physically available host memory. Overcommitting requires sufficient swap space for all guests and all host processes.

Without sufficient swap space for all processes in virtual memory the `pdflush` process, the cleanup process, starts. The `pdflush` process kills processes to free memory so the system does not crash. `pdflush` may destroy virtualized guests or other system processes which may cause file system errors and may leave virtualized guests unbootable. This can cause issues if virtualized guests use their total RAM.

**Warning**

If sufficient swap is not available guest operating systems will be forcibly shut down. This may leave guests inoperable. Avoid this by never overcommitting more memory than there is swap available.

Overcommitting with KSM

If KSM is used ensure the swap size is sufficient for the overcommitted RAM. KSM reduces the RAM usage of identical or similar guests. Overcommitting guests with KSM without sufficient swap may be possible but is not recommended. For more information on KSM and overcommitting, refer to *Chapter 21, KSM.*
Chapter 20. Overcommitting with KVM

Configuring swap for overcommitting memory
The swap partition is used for swapping underused memory to the hard drive to speed up memory performance. The default size of the swap partition is calculated from the physical RAM of the host.

Red Hat Knowledgebase\(^1\) has an article on safely and efficiently determining the size of the swap partition.

The swap partition must be large enough to provide virtual memory for all guests and the host system.

**Important**

The example below is provided as a guide for configuring swap only. The settings listed may not be appropriate for your environment.

---

**Example 20.1. Memory overcommit example**

ExampleServer1 has 32GB of RAM. The system is being configured to run 56 guests with 1GB of virtualized memory. The host system rarely uses more than 4GB of memory for system processes, drivers and storage caching.

32GB minus 4GB for the host leaves 28GB of physical RAM for virtualized guests. Each guest uses 1GB of RAM, a total of 56GB of virtual RAM is required for the guests.

The Red Hat Knowledgebase recommends 8GB of swap for a system with 32GB of RAM. To safely overcommit memory there must be sufficient virtual memory for all guests and the host. The host has 28GB of RAM for guests (which need 56GB of RAM). Therefore, the system needs at least 28GB of swap for the guests.

ExampleServer1 requires at least 36GB (8GB for the host and 28GB for the guests) of swap to safely overcommit for all 56 guests.

It is possible to overcommit memory over ten times the amount of physical RAM in the system. This only works with certain types of guest, for example, desktop virtualization with minimal intensive usage or running several identical guests with KSM. Configuring swap and memory overcommit is not a formula, each environment and setup is different. Your environment must be tested and customized to ensure stability and performance.

For more information on KSM and overcommitting, refer to *Chapter 21, KSM*.

Overcommitting virtualized CPUs
The KVM hypervisor supports overcommitting virtualized CPUs. Virtualized CPUs can be overcommitted as far as load limits of virtualized guests allow. Use caution when overcommitting VCPUs as loads near 100% may cause dropped requests or unusable response times.

Virtualized CPUs are overcommitted best when each virtualized guest only has a single VCPU. The Linux scheduler is very efficient with this type of load. KVM should safely support guests with loads under 100% at a ratio of five VCPUs. Overcommitting single VCPU virtualized guests is not an issue.

You cannot overcommit symmetric multiprocessing guests on more than the physical number of processing cores. For example a guest with four VCPUs should not be run on a host with a dual

---

\(^1\) [http://kbase.redhat.com/faq/docs/DOC-15252](http://kbase.redhat.com/faq/docs/DOC-15252)
Assigning guests VCPUs up to the number of physical cores is appropriate and works as expected. For example, running virtualized guests with four VCPUs on a quad core host. Guests with less than 100% loads should function effectively in this setup.

**Always test first**

Do not overcommit memory or CPUs in a production environment without extensive testing. Applications which use 100% of memory or processing resources may become unstable in overcommitted environments. Test before deploying.
KSM

The concept of shared memory is common in modern operating systems. For example, when a program is first started it shares all of its memory with the parent program. When either the child or parent program tries to modify this memory, the kernel allocates a new memory region, copies the original contents and allows the program to modify this new region. This is known as copy on write.

KSM is a new Linux feature which uses this concept in reverse. KSM enables the kernel to examine two or more already running programs and compare their memory. If any memory regions or pages are identical, KSM reduces multiple references to multiple identical memory pages to a single reference to a single page. This page is then marked copy on write. If the contents of the page is modified, a new page is created.

This is useful for virtualization with KVM. When a virtualized guest is started, it only inherits the memory from the parent qemu-kvm process. Once the guest is running the contents of the guest operating system image can be shared when guests are running the same operating system or applications. KSM only identifies and merges identical pages which does not interfere with the guest or impact the security of the host or the guests. KSM allows KVM to request that these identical guest memory regions be shared.

KSM provides enhanced memory speed and utilization. With KSM, common process data is stored in cache or in main memory. This reduces cache misses for the KVM guests which can improve performance for some applications and operating systems. Secondly, sharing memory reduces the overall memory usage of guests which allows for higher densities and greater utilization of resources.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux uses two separate methods for controlling KSM:

- The ksm service starts and stops the KSM kernel thread.
- The ksmtuned service controls and tunes the ksm, dynamically managing same-page merging. The ksmtuned service starts ksm and stops the ksm service if memory sharing is not necessary. The ksmtuned service must be told with the retune parameter to run when new virtualized guests are created or destroyed.

Both of these services are controlled with the standard service management tools.

The KSM service

The ksm service is a standard Linux daemon that uses the KSM kernel features.

KSM is included in the qemu-common package, which is a dependency of KVM. KSM is enabled by default in Red Hat Enterprise Linux. When the ksm service is not started, KSM shares only 2000 pages. This default is low and provides limited memory saving benefits.

When the ksm service is started, KSM will share up to half of the host system's main memory. Start the ksm service to enable KSM to share more memory.

```
# service ksm start
Starting ksm: [ OK ]
```

The ksm service can be added to the default startup sequence. Make the ksm service persistent with the chkconfig command.

```
# chkconfig ksm on
```
Chapter 21. KSM

The KSM tuning service
The ksmtuned service does not have any options. The ksmtuned service loops and adjusts ksm. The ksmtuned service is notified by libvirt when a virtualized guest is created or destroyed.

```
# service ksmtuned start
Starting ksmtuned:                                         [ OK ]
```

The ksmtuned service can be tuned with the `retune` parameter. The `retune` parameter instructs ksmtuned to run tuning functions manually.

The `/etc/ksmtuned.conf` file is the configuration file for the ksmtuned service. The file output below is the default `ksmtuned.conf` file.

```
# Configuration file for ksmtuned.
# How long ksmtuned should sleep between tuning adjustments
# KSM_MONITOR_INTERVAL=60
#
# Millisecond sleep between ksm scans for 16Gb server.
# Smaller servers sleep more, bigger sleep less.
# KSM_SLEEP_MSEC=10
# KSM_NPAGES_BOOST=300
# KSM_NPAGES_DECAY=-50
# KSM_NPAGES_MIN=64
# KSM_NPAGES_MAX=1250
# KSM_THRES_COEF=20
# KSM_THRES_CONST=2048
#
# uncomment the following to enable ksmtuned debug information
# LOGFILE=/var/log/ksmtuned
# DEBUG=1
```

KSM variables and monitoring
KSM stores monitoring data in the `/sys/kernel/mm/ksm/` directory. Files in this directory are updated by the kernel and are an accurate record of KSM usage and statistics.

The variables in the list below are also configurable variables in the `/etc/ksmtuned.conf` file as noted below.

The `/sys/kernel/mm/ksm/` files
- `full_scans`: Full scans run.
- `pages_shared`: Total pages shared.
- `pages_sharing`: Pages presently shared.
- `pages_to_scan`: Pages not scanned.
- `pages_unshared`: Pages no longer shared.
pages_volatile
   Number of volatile pages.

run
   Whether the KSM process is running.

sleep_millisecs
   Sleep milliseconds.

KSM tuning activity is stored in the /var/log/ksmtuned log file if the DEBUG=1 line is added to the /etc/ksmtuned.conf file. The log file location can be changed with the LOGFILE parameter. Changing the log file location is not advised and may require special configuration of SELinux settings.

The /etc/sysconfig/ksm file can manually set a number or all pages used by KSM as not swappable.

1. Open the /etc/sysconfig/ksm file with a text editor.

   ```
   # The maximum number of unswappable kernel pages
   # which may be allocated by ksm (0 for unlimited)
   # If unset, defaults to half of total memory
   # KSM_MAX_KERNEL_PAGES=
   ```

2. Uncomment the KSM_MAX_KERNEL_PAGES line to manually configure the number of unswappable pages for KSM. Setting this variable to 0 configures KSM to keep all identical pages in main memory which can improve performance if the system has sufficient main memory.

   ```
   # The maximum number of unswappable kernel pages
   # which may be allocated by ksm (0 for unlimited)
   # If unset, defaults to half of total memory
   KSM_MAX_KERNEL_PAGES=0
   ```

**Deactivating KSM**

KSM has a performance overhead which may be too large for certain environments or host systems.

KSM can be deactivated by stopping the ksm service and the ksmtuned service. Stopping the services deactivates KSM but does not persist after restarting.

```
# service ksm stop
Stopping ksm:  [ OK ]
# service ksmtuned stop
Stopping ksmtuned:  [ OK ]
```

Persistently deactivate KSM with the `chkconfig` command. To turn off the services, run the following commands:

```
# chkconfig ksm off
# chkconfig ksmtuned off
```
Advanced virtualization administration

This chapter covers advanced administration tools for fine tuning and controlling virtualized guests and host system resources.

**Note**

This chapter is a work in progress. Refer back to this document at a later date.

### 22.1. Guest scheduling

KVM guests function as Linux processes. By default, KVM guests are prioritized and scheduled with the Linux Completely Fair Scheduler. Tuning the schedule for guest processes may be required for some environments or to prioritize certain guests.

### 22.2. Advanced memory management

Capping memory available to guests and preventing overcommit on certain guests.

### 22.3. Guest block I/O throttling

Limit guest block I/O throughput.

### 22.4. Guest network I/O throttling

Limit guest network activity.
Migrating to KVM from other hypervisors using virt-v2v

The `virt-v2v` command converts guests from a foreign hypervisor to run on KVM, managed by libvirt. The `virt-v2v` command can currently convert Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2008 virtualized guests running on Xen, KVM and VMware ESX. The `virt-v2v` command enables para-virtualized (virtio) drivers in the converted guest if possible.

`virt-v2v` is available on Red Hat Network (RHN) in the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (v. 6 for 64-bit x86_64) or Red Hat Enterprise Linux Workstation (v.6 for x86_64) channel.

The `virt-v2v` tool requires root access to the host system.

Installing virt-v2v

To install `virt-v2v` from RHN, ensure the system is subscribed to the appropriate channel, then run:

```
yum install virt-v2v
```

23.1. Preparing to convert a virtualized guest

Before a virtualized guest can be converted, ensure that the following steps are completed.

1. Create a local storage domain for transferred storage

   `virt-v2v` copies the guest storage to a locally defined libvirt storage pool during import. This pool can be defined using any libvirt tool, and can be of any type. The simplest way to create a new pool is with `virt-manager`. Select your host, right click and select details.

   ![Figure 23.1. Select host details](image)

   Select the **Storage** tab.
Figure 23.2. The storage tab

Click the plus sign (+) button to add a new storage pool.
Preparing to convert a virtualized guest running Linux

Before a virtualized guest running Linux can be converted, ensure that the following steps are completed.

1. Obtain the software

As part of the conversion process, **virt-v2v** may install a new kernel and drivers on the virtualized guest. If the host running **virt-v2v** is registered to Red Hat Network (RHN), the required packages will be automatically downloaded. For environments where RHN is not available, the **virt-v2v.conf** file references a list of RPMs used for this purpose. The RPMs relevant to your virtualized guest must be downloaded manually from RHN and made available in the directory specified by the path-root configuration element, which by default is /var/lib/
virt-v2v/software/. virt-v2v will display an error similar to Example 23.1, “Missing Package error” if software it depends upon for a particular conversion is not available.

Example 23.1. Missing Package error

```
virt-v2v: Installation failed because the following files referenced in the
configuration file are required, but missing:
rhel/5/kernel-2.6.18-128.el5.x86_64.rpm
rhel/5/ecryptfs-utils-56-8.el5.x86_64.rpm
rhel/5/ecryptfs-utils-56-8.el5.i386.rpm
```

To obtain the relevant RPMs for your environment, repeat these steps for each missing package:

1. Login to Red Hat Network
2. Select Channels
3. Use the Filter by Product Channel function to select the channel for the version of Red Hat Enterprise Linux running on the virtualized guest. In the case of the example shown in Example 23.1, "Missing Package error", the channel is Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server 5.3.
4. Select the Packages tab
5. Use the Filter by Package function to locate the missing package
6. Select the package exactly matching the one shown in the error message. For the example shown in Example 23.1, "Missing Package error", the first package is kernel-2.6.18-128.el5.x86_64
7. Select Download Package at the bottom of the package details page
8. Save the downloaded package to the appropriate directory in /var/lib/virt-v2v/software. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5, the directory is /var/lib/virt-v2v/software/rhel/5

Preparing to convert a virtualized guest running Windows

Before a virtualized guest running Windows can be converted, ensure that the following steps are completed.

**Important**

Virtualized guests running Windows can only be converted for output to Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization. The conversion procedure depends on post-processing by the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager for completion. See Section 23.4.2, "Configuration changes for Windows virtualized guests" for details of the process. Virtualized guests running Windows cannot be converted for output to libvirt.

1. Obtain the Guest Tools ISO

As part of the conversion process for virtualized guests running Windows, the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager will install drivers using the Guest Tools ISO. See Section 23.4.2, "Configuration changes for Windows virtualized guests" for details of the process. The Guest Tools ISO is obtained as follows:
1. From the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager, Login to Red Hat Network

2. Click on **Download Software**

3. Select the **Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization (x86-64)** channel

4. Select the **Red Hat Enterprise Virt Manager for Desktops (v.2 x86)** or **Red Hat Enterprise Virt Manager for Desktops (v.2 x86)** channel, as appropriate for your subscription.

5. Download **Guest Tools ISO for 2.2** and save it locally

2. Upload the Guest Tools ISO to the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager

Upload the Guest Tools ISO using the ISO Uploader. See the **Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization for Servers Administration Guide** for instructions.

3. Ensure that the **libguestfs-winsupport** package is installed on the host running **virt-v2v**. This package provides support for NTFS, which is used by many Windows systems. If you attempt to convert a virtualized guest using NTFS without the **libguestfs-winsupport** package installed, the conversion will fail.

4. Ensure that the **virtio-win** package is installed on the host running **virt-v2v**. This package provides para-virtualized block and network drivers for Windows guests. If you attempt to convert a virtualized guest running Windows without the **virtio-win** package installed, the conversion will fail giving an error message concerning missing files.

**Preparing to convert a local Xen virtualized guest**

The following is required when converting virtualized guests on a host which used to run Xen, but has been updated to run KVM. It is not required when converting a Xen guest imported directly from a running libvirt/Xen instance.

1. Obtain the XML for the virtualized guest

   **virt-v2v** uses a libvirt domain description to determine the current configuration of the virtualized guest, including the location of its storage. Before starting the conversion, obtain this from the host running the virtualized guest with the following command:

   ```bash
   virsh dumpxml vm-name > vm-name.xml
   ```

   This will require booting into a Xen kernel to obtain the XML, as libvirt needs to connect to a running Xen hypervisor to obtain its metadata. The conversion process is optimized for KVM, so obtaining domain data while running a Xen kernel, then performing the conversion using a KVM kernel will be more efficient than running the conversion on a Xen kernel.

**23.2. Converting virtualized guests**

Once you have prepared to convert the virtualized guests, use **virt-v2v** to perform the actual conversions. This section provides the steps to convert the virtualized guests, and the reference table for **virt-v2v**. Note that conversions are resource intensive processes, involving copying the whole disk image for a virtualized guest. In typical environments, converting a single virtualized guest takes approximately 5-10 minutes.

**23.2.1. virt-v2v**

**virt-v2v** converts guests from a foreign hypervisor to run on KVM, managed by libvirt.
Chapter 23. Migrating to KVM from other hypervisors using virt-v2v

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>virt-v2v -i libvirtxml -op pool --bridge brname vm-name.xml</code></td>
<td>Specifying input method (libvirtxml)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>virt-v2v -op pool --network netname vm-name</code></td>
<td>Specifying network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>virt-v2v -ic esx://esx.example.com/?no_verify=1 -op pool --bridge brname vm-name</code></td>
<td>Specifying connection (esx)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Parameters

**-i input**
- Specifies the input method to obtain the guest for conversion.
- Default is libvirt.
- Supported options are:
  - **libvirt**: Guest argument is the name of a libvirt domain.
  - **libvirtxml**: Guest argument is the path to an XML file containing a libvirt domain.

**-ic URI**
- Specifies the connection to use when using the libvirt input method. If omitted, defaults to qemu:///system.
- `virt-v2v` can currently automatically obtain guest storage from local libvirt connections, ESX connections, and connections over SSH.
- Other types of connection are not supported.

**-o method**
- Specifies the output method. If no output method is specified, default is libvirt.
- Supported output methods are:
  - **libvirt**: Create a libvirt guest. See `-oc` and `-op` options. `-op` must be specified for the libvirt output method.
  - **rhev**: Create a guest on a Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Export storage domain, which can later be imported using the manager.
  - The `-osd` or Export storage domain must be specified for the `rhev` output method.

**-oc URI**
- Specifies the libvirt connection to use to create the converted guest.
- If omitted, defaults to qemu:///system.
- Note that `virt-v2v` must be able to write directly to storage described by this libvirt connection.
- This makes writing to a remote connection impractical at present.

**-op pool**
- Specifies the pool which will be used to create new storage for the converted guest.

**-osd domain**
- Specifies the path to an existing Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Export storage domain.
- The domain must be in the format `<host> <path>`; for example, `storage.example.com:/rhev/export`.
- The nfs export must be mountable and writable by the machine running `virt-v2v`.

**-f file | --config file**
- Load the `virt-v2v` configuration from file.
-_defaults to `/etc/virt-v2v.conf` if it exists.

**-n network | --network network**
- Map all guest bridges or networks which don’t have a mapping in the configuration file to the specified network.
- This option cannot be used in conjunction with `--bridge`.

**-b bridge | --bridge bridge**
- Map all guest bridges or networks which don’t have a mapping in the configuration file to the specified bridge.
- This option cannot be used in conjunction with `--network`.

**--help**
- Display brief help.
Converting a local Xen virtualized guest

23.2.2. Converting a local Xen virtualized guest
Ensure that the virtualized guest's XML is available locally, and that the storage referred to in the XML is available locally at the same paths.

To convert the virtualized guest from an XML file, run:

```
virt-v2v -i libvirtxml -op pool --bridge brname vm-name.xml
```

Where `pool` is the local storage pool to hold the image, `brname` is the name of a local network bridge to connect the converted guest's network to, and `vm-name.xml` is the path to the exported XML. You may also use the `--network` parameter to connect to a locally managed network, or specify multiple mappings in `/etc/virt-v2v.conf`.

If your guest uses a Xen para-virtualized kernel (it would be called something like kernel-xen or kernel-xenU), `virt-v2v` will attempt to install a new kernel during the conversion process. You can avoid this requirement by installing a regular kernel, which won't reference a hypervisor in its name, alongside the Xen kernel prior to conversion. You should not make this newly installed kernel your default kernel, because Xen will not boot it. `virt-v2v` will make it the default during conversion.

23.2.3. Converting a remote Xen virtualized guest
Xen virtualized guests can be converted remotely via SSH. Ensure that the host running the virtualized guest is accessible via SSH.

To convert the virtualized guest, run:

```
virt-v2v -ic xen+ssh://root@vmhost.example.com -op pool --bridge brname vm-name
```

Where `vmhost.example.com` is the host running the virtualized guest, `pool` is the local storage pool to hold the image, `brname` is the name of a local network bridge to connect the converted guest's network to, and `vm-name` is the domain of the Xen virtualized guest. You may also use the `--network` parameter to connect to a locally managed network, or specify multiple mappings in `/etc/virt-v2v.conf`.

If your guest uses a Xen para-virtualized kernel (it would be called something like kernel-xen or kernel-xenU), `virt-v2v` will attempt to install a new kernel during the conversion process. You can avoid this requirement by installing a regular kernel, which won't reference a hypervisor in its name, alongside the Xen kernel prior to conversion. You should not make this newly installed kernel your default kernel, because Xen will not boot it. `virt-v2v` will make it the default during conversion.

23.2.4. Converting a VMware ESX virtualized guest
Ensure that the virtualized guest is stopped prior to running the v2v process.

To convert the virtualized guest, run:

```
virt-v2v -ic esx://esx.example.com/ -op pool --bridge brname vm-name
```

Where `esx.example.com` is the VMware ESX server, `pool` is the local storage pool to hold the image, `brname` is the name of a local network bridge to connect the converted guest's network to, and `vm-name` is the name of the virtualized guest. You may also use the `--network` parameter to connect to a locally managed network, or specify multiple mappings in `/etc/virt-v2v.conf`. 
Chapter 23. Migrating to KVM from other hypervisors using virt-v2v

Authenticating to the ESX server
Connecting to the ESX server will require authentication. virt-v2v supports password authentication when connecting to ESX. It reads passwords from $HOME/.netrc. The format of this file is described in the netrc(5) man page. An example entry is:

```
machine esx.example.com login root password s3cr3t
```

The .netrc file must have a permission mask of 0600 to be read correctly by virt-v2v.

Connecting to an ESX server with an invalid certificate
In non-production environments, the ESX server may have a non-valid certificate, for example a self-signed certificate. In this case, certificate checking can be explicitly disabled by adding '?no_verify=1' to the connection URI as shown below:

```
... -ic esx://esx.example.com/?no_verify=1 ...
```

23.2.5. Converting a virtualized guest running Windows

Important

Virtualized guests running Windows can only be converted for output to Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization. The conversion procedure depends on post-processing by the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager for completion. See Section 23.4.2, "Configuration changes for Windows virtualized guests" for details of the process. Virtualized guests running Windows cannot be converted for output to libvirt.

This example demonstrates converting a local Xen virtualized guest running Windows for output to Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization. Ensure that the virtualized guest's XML is available locally, and that the storage referred to in the XML is available locally at the same paths.

To convert the virtualized guest from an XML file, run:

```
virt-v2v -i libvirtxml -o rhev -osd storage.example.com:/exportdomain --network rhevm vm-name.xml
```

Where vm-name.xml is the path to the virtualized guest's exported xml, and storage.example.com:/exportdomain is the export storage domain. You may also use the --network parameter to connect to a locally managed network, or specify multiple mappings in /etc/virt-v2v.conf.

If your guest uses a Xen para-virtualized kernel (it would be called something like kernel-xen or kernel-xenU), virt-v2v will attempt to install a new kernel during the conversion process. You can avoid this requirement by installing a regular kernel, which won't reference a hypervisor in its name, alongside the Xen kernel prior to conversion. You should not make this newly installed kernel your default kernel, because Xen will not boot it. virt-v2v will make it the default during conversion.
23.3. Running converted virtualized guests

On successful completion, *virt-v2v* will create a new libvirt domain for the converted virtualized guest with the same name as the original virtualized guest. It can be started as usual using libvirt tools, for example *virt-manager*.

**Guest network configuration**

*virt-v2v* cannot currently reconfigure a guest's network configuration. If the converted guest is not connected to the same subnet as the source, its network configuration may have to be updated.

23.4. Configuration changes

As well as configuring libvirt appropriately, *virt-v2v* will make certain changes to a guest to enable it to run on a KVM hypervisor either with or without virtio drivers. These changes are specific to the guest operating system. The details specified here pertain to supported Red Hat based Linux distributions and Windows.

23.4.1. Configuration changes for Linux virtualized guests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Change</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kernel</td>
<td>Un-bootable, that is, xen para-virtualized, kernels will be uninstalled. No new kernel will be installed if there is a remaining kernel which supports virtio. If no remaining kernel supports virtio and the configuration file specifies a new kernel it will be installed and configured as the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X reconfiguration</td>
<td>If the guest has X configured, its display driver will be updated. See GUEST DRIVERS for which driver will be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rename block devices</td>
<td>If changes have caused block devices to change name, these changes will be reflected in /etc/fstab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure device drivers</td>
<td>Whether virtio or non-virtio drivers are configured, <em>virt-v2v</em> will ensure that the correct network and block drivers are specified in the modprobe configuration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>initrd</td>
<td><em>virt-v2v</em> will ensure that the initrd for the default kernel supports booting the root device, whether it is using virtio or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELinux</td>
<td><em>virt-v2v</em> will initiate a relabel of the guest on the next boot. This ensures that any changes it has made are correctly labeled according to the guest's local policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*virt-v2v* will configure the following drivers in a Linux guest:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Para-virtualized driver type</th>
<th>Driver module</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>cirrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Para-virtualized driver type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Driver module</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtio_blk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtio_net</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, initrd will preload the virtio_pci driver.

### Other drivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display</th>
<th>cirrus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Block</td>
<td>Virtualized IDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network</td>
<td>Virtualized e1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 23.4.2. Configuration changes for Windows virtualized guests

**Warning**

Before converting Windows virtualized guests, ensure that the *libguestfs-winsupport* and *virtio-win* packages are installed on the host running *virt-v2v*. These packages provide support for NTFS and Windows para-virtualized block and network drivers. If you attempt to convert a virtualized guest using NTFS without the *libguestfs-winsupport* package installed, the conversion will fail. If you attempt to convert a virtualized guest running Windows without the *virtio-win* package installed, the conversion will fail giving an error message concerning missing files.

*virt-v2v* can convert virtualized guests running Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2008. The conversion process for virtualized guests running Windows is slightly different to the process for virtualized guests running Linux. Windows virtualized guest images are converted as follows:

1. *virt-v2v* installs virtio block drivers.
2. *virt-v2v* installs the CDUpgrader utility.
3. *virt-v2v* makes registry changes to include the virtio block drivers in the CriticalDeviceDatabase section of the registry, and ensure the CDUpgrader service is started at the next boot.

At this point, *virt-v2v* has completed the conversion. The converted virtualized guest is now bootable, but does not yet have all the drivers installed necessary to function correctly. The conversion must be finished by the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager. The Manager performs the following steps:

1. The virtualized guest is imported and run on the Manager. See the *Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization for Servers Administration Guide* for details.

**Important**

The first boot stage can take several minutes to run, and must not be interrupted. It will run automatically without any administrator intervention other than starting the virtualized guest. To ensure the process is not interrupted, no user should login to the virtualized guest until it has quiesced. You can check for this in the Manager GUI.

2. The Manager attaches the Guest Tools CD to the virtual machine.
3. CDUpgrader detects the Guest Tools CD and installs all the virtio drivers from it, including a re-install of the virtio block drivers.
Chapter 24.

Miscellaneous administration tasks

This chapter contain useful hints and tips to improve virtualization performance, scale and stability.

24.1. Automatically starting guests

This section covers how to make virtualized guests start automatically during the host system's boot phase.

This example uses `virsh` to set a guest, `TestServer`, to automatically start when the host boots.

```
# virsh autostart TestServer
Domain TestServer marked as autostarted
```

The guest now automatically starts with the host.

To stop a guest automatically booting use the `--disable` parameter

```
# virsh autostart --disable TestServer
Domain TestServer unmarked as autostarted
```

The guest no longer automatically starts with the host.

24.2. Using qemu-img

The `qemu-img` command line tool is used for formatting various file systems used by KVM. `qemu-img` should be used for formatting virtualized guest images, additional storage devices and network storage. `qemu-img` options and usages are listed below.

**Formatting and creating new images or devices**

Create the new disk image `filename` of size `size` and format `format`.

```
```

If `base_image` is specified, then the image will record only the differences from `base_image`. No size needs to be specified in this case. `base_image` will never be modified unless you use the "commit" monitor command.

**Convert an existing image to another format**

The `convert` option is used for converting a recognized format to another image format.

Command format:

```
# qemu-img convert [-c] [-e] [-f format] filename [-O output_format] output_filename
```

Convert the disk image `filename` to disk image `output_filename` using format `output_format`. The disk image can be optionally encrypted with the `-e` option or compressed with the `-c` option.

Only the `qcow2` format supports encryption or compression. The compression is read-only. It means that if a compressed sector is rewritten, then it is rewritten as uncompressed data.

The encryption uses the AES format with very secure 128-bit keys. Use a long password (over 16 characters) to get maximum protection.
Image conversion is also useful to get smaller image when using a format which can grow, such as QCOW or COW. The empty sectors are detected and suppressed from the destination image.

**getting image information**

The `info` parameter displays information about a disk image. The format for the `info` option is as follows:

```
# qemu-img info [-f format] filename
```

give information about the disk image filename. Use it in particular to know the size reserved on disk which can be different from the displayed size. If VM snapshots are stored in the disk image, they are displayed too.

**Supported formats**

The format of an image is usually guessed automatically. The following formats are supported:

- **raw**
  Raw disk image format (default). This format has the advantage of being simple and easily exportable to all other emulators. If your file system supports holes (for example in ext2 or ext3 on Linux or NTFS on Windows), then only the written sectors will reserve space. Use `qemu-img info` to know the real size used by the image or `ls -ls` on Unix/Linux.

- **qcow2**
  QEMU image format, the most versatile format. Use it to have smaller images (useful if your file system does not supports holes, for example: on Windows), optional AES encryption, zlib based compression and support of multiple VM snapshots.

- **qcow**
  Old QEMU image format. Only included for compatibility with older versions.

- **cow**
  User Mode Linux Copy On Write image format. The cow format is included only for compatibility with previous versions. It does not work with Windows.

- **vmdk**
  VMware 3 and 4 compatible image format.

- **cloop**
  Linux Compressed Loop image, useful only to reuse directly compressed CD-ROM images present for example in the Knoppix CD-ROMs.

**24.3. Verifying virtualization extensions**

Use this section to determine whether your system has the hardware virtualization extensions. Virtualization extensions (Intel VT or AMD-V) are required for full virtualization.

1. Run the following command to verify the CPU virtualization extensions are available:

   ```bash
   $ grep -E 'svm|vmx' /proc/cpuinfo
   ```

2. Analyze the output.
Setting KVM processor affinities

- The following output contains a **vmx** entry indicating an Intel processor with the Intel VT extensions:

```
flags : fpu tsc msr pae mce cx8 apic mtrr mca cmov pat pse36 clflush
dts acpi mmx fxsr sse sse2 ss ht tm syscall lm constant_tsc pni monitor ds_cpl
vmx est tm2 cx16 xtpr lahf_lm
```

- The following output contains an **svm** entry indicating an AMD processor with the AMD-V extensions:

```
flags : fpu tsc msr pae mce cx8 apic mtrr mca cmov pat pse36 clflush
mmx fxsr sse sse2 ht syscall nx mmxext fxsr_opt lm 3dnowext 3dnow pni cx16
lahf_lm cmp_legacy svm cr8legacy ts fid vid ttp tm stc
```

If any output is received, the processor has the hardware virtualization extensions. However in some circumstances manufacturers disable the virtualization extensions in BIOS.

The “**flags** :” output content may appear multiple times, once for each hyperthread, core or CPU on the system.

The virtualization extensions may be disabled in the BIOS. If the extensions do not appear or full virtualization does not work refer to Procedure 34.1, “Enabling virtualization extensions in BIOS”.

3. **For users of the KVM hypervisor**

   If the kvm package is installed. As an additional check, verify that the **kvm** modules are loaded in the kernel:

```
# lsmod | grep kvm
```

   If the output includes **kvm_intel** or **kvm_amd** then the **kvm** hardware virtualization modules are loaded and your system meets requirements. sudo

**Additional output**

If the **libvirt** package is installed, the **virsh** command can output a full list of virtualization system capabilities. Run **virsh capabilities** as root to receive the complete list.

24.4. Setting KVM processor affinities

This section covers setting processor and processing core affinities with **libvirt** and KVM guests.

By default, libvirt provisions guests using the hypervisor's default policy. For most hypervisors, the policy is to run guests on any available processing core or CPU. There are times when an explicit policy may be better, in particular for systems with a NUMA (Non-Uniform Memory Access) architecture. A guest on a NUMA system should be pinned to a processing core so that its memory allocations are always local to the node it is running on. This avoids cross-node memory transports which have less bandwidth and can significantly degrade performance.

On a non-NUMA systems some form of explicit placement across the hosts' sockets, cores and hyperthreads may be more efficient.
Identifying CPU and NUMA topology

The first step in deciding what policy to apply is to determine the host’s memory and CPU topology. The `virsh nodeinfo` command provides information about how many sockets, cores and hyperthreads there are attached a host.

```
# virsh nodeinfo
CPU model:           x86_64
CPU(s):              8
CPU frequency:       1000 MHz
CPU socket(s):       2
Core(s) per socket:  4
Thread(s) per core:  1
NUMA cell(s):        1
Memory size:         8179176 kB
```

This system has eight CPUs, in two sockets, each processor has four cores.

The output shows that that the system has a NUMA architecture. NUMA is more complex and requires more data to accurately interpret. Use the `virsh capabilities` to get additional output data on the CPU configuration.

```
# virsh capabilities
<capabilities>
  <host>
    <cpu>
      <arch>x86_64</arch>
    </cpu>
    <migration_features>
      <live/>
      <uri_transports>
        <uri_transport>tcp</uri_transport>
      </uri_transports>
    </migration_features>
    <topology>
      <cells num='2'>
        <cell id='0'>
          <cpus num='4'>
            <cpu id='0'/>
            <cpu id='1'/>
            <cpu id='2'/>
            <cpu id='3'/>
          </cpus>
        </cell>
        <cell id='1'>
          <cpus num='4'>
            <cpu id='4'/>
            <cpu id='5'/>
            <cpu id='6'/>
            <cpu id='7'/>
          </cpus>
        </cell>
      </cells>
    </topology>
  </host>
  <secmodel>
    <model>selinux</model>
    <doi>0</doi>
  </secmodel>
</capabilities>
```

[ Additional XML removed ]
Setting KVM processor affinities

The output shows two NUMA nodes (also known as NUMA cells), each containing four logical CPUs (four processing cores). This system has two sockets, therefore it can be inferred that each socket is a separate NUMA node. For a guest with four virtual CPUs, it would be optimal to lock the guest to physical CPUs 0 to 3, or 4 to 7 to avoid accessing non-local memory, which are significantly slower than accessing local memory.

If a guest requires eight virtual CPUs, as each NUMA node only has four physical CPUs, a better utilization may be obtained by running a pair of four virtual CPU guests and splitting the work between them, rather than using a single 8 CPU guest. Running across multiple NUMA nodes significantly degrades performance for physical and virtualized tasks.

Decide which NUMA node can run the guest

Locking a guest to a particular NUMA node offers no benefit if that node does not have sufficient free memory for that guest. libvirt stores information on the free memory available on each node. Use the `virsh freecell` command to display the free memory on all NUMA nodes.

```
# virsh freecell
0: 2203620 kB
1: 3354784 kB
```

If a guest requires 3 GB of RAM allocated, then the guest should be run on NUMA node (cell) 1. Node 0 only has 2.2 GB free which is probably not sufficient for certain guests.

Lock a guest to a NUMA node or physical CPU set

Once you have determined which node to run the guest on, refer to the capabilities data (the output of the `virsh capabilities` command) about NUMA topology.

1. Extract from the `virsh capabilities` output.

```xml
<topology>
  <cells num='2'>
    <cell id='0'>
      <cpus num='4'>
        <cpu id='0'/>
        <cpu id='1'/>
        <cpu id='2'/>
        <cpu id='3'/>
      </cpus>
    </cell>
    <cell id='1'>
      <cpus num='4'>
        <cpu id='4'/>
        <cpu id='5'/>
        <cpu id='6'/>
        <cpu id='7'/>
      </cpus>
    </cell>
  </cells>
</topology>
```

2. Observe that the node 1, `<cell id='1'>`, has physical CPUs 4 to 7.

3. The guest can be locked to a set of CPUs by appending the `cpuset` attribute to the configuration file.

   a. While the guest is offline, open the configuration file with `virsh edit`. 

b. Locate where the guest's virtual CPU count is specified. Find the \texttt{vcpus} element.

\begin{verbatim}
<vcpus>4</vcpus>
\end{verbatim}

The guest in this example has four CPUs.

c. Add a \texttt{cpuset} attribute with the CPU numbers for the relevant NUMA cell.

\begin{verbatim}
<vcpus cpuset='4-7'>4</vcpus>
\end{verbatim}

4. Save the configuration file and restart the guest.

The guest has been locked to CPUs 4 to 7.

**Automatically locking guests to CPUs with virt-install**

The \texttt{virt-install} provisioning tool provides a simple way to automatically apply a 'best fit' NUMA policy when guests are created.

The \texttt{cpuset} option for \texttt{virt-install} can use a CPU set of processors or the parameter \texttt{auto}. The \texttt{auto} parameter automatically determines the optimal CPU locking using the available NUMA data.

For a NUMA system, use the \texttt{--cpuset=auto} with the \texttt{virt-install} command when creating new guests.

**Tuning CPU affinity on running guests**

There may be times where modifying CPU affinities on running guests is preferable to rebooting the guest. The \texttt{virsh vcpuinfo} and \texttt{virsh vcpupin} commands can perform CPU affinity changes on running guests.

The \texttt{virsh vcpuinfo} command gives up to date information about where each virtual CPU is running.

In this example, \texttt{guest1} is a guest with four virtual CPUs is running on a KVM host.

\begin{verbatim}
# virsh vcpuinfo guest1
VCPU: 0
CPU: 3
State: running
CPU time: 0.5s
CPU Affinity: yyyyyyy
VCPU: 1
CPU: 1
State: running
CPU Affinity: yyyyyyy
VCPU: 2
CPU: 1
State: running
CPU Affinity: yyyyyyy
VCPU: 3
CPU: 2
State: running
CPU Affinity: yyyyyyy
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{virsh vcpuinfo} output (the \texttt{yyyyyyyy} value of \texttt{CPU Affinity}) shows that the guest can presently run on any CPU.
To lock the virtual CPUs to the second NUMA node (CPUs four to seven), run the following commands.

```
# virsh vcpupin guest1 0 4
# virsh vcpupin guest1 1 5
# virsh vcpupin guest1 2 6
# virsh vcpupin guest1 3 7
```

The `virsh vcpuinfo` command confirms the change in affinity.

```
# virsh vcpuinfo guest1
VCPU:           0
CPU:            4
State:          running
CPU time:       32.2s
CPU Affinity:   ----y---
VCPU:           1
CPU:            5
State:          running
CPU time:       16.9s
CPU Affinity:   -----y--
VCPU:           2
CPU:            6
State:          running
CPU time:       11.9s
CPU Affinity:   ------y-
VCPU:           3
CPU:            7
State:          running
CPU time:       14.6s
CPU Affinity:   -------y
```

Information from the KVM processes can also confirm that the guest is now running on the second NUMA node.

```
# grep pid /var/run/libvirt/qemu/guest1.xml
<domstatus state='running' pid='4907'>
# grep Cpus_allowed_list /proc/4907/task/*/status
/proc/4907/task/4916/status:Cpus_allowed_list: 4
/proc/4907/task/4917/status:Cpus_allowed_list: 5
/proc/4907/task/4918/status:Cpus_allowed_list: 6
/proc/4907/task/4919/status:Cpus_allowed_list: 7
</section>
```

### 24.5. Generating a new unique MAC address

In some case you will need to generate a new and unique MAC address for a guest. There is no command line tool available to generate a new MAC address at the time of writing. The script provided below can generate a new MAC address for your guests. Save the script to your guest as `macgen.py`. Now from that directory you can run the script using `. /macgen.py` and it will generate a new MAC Address. A sample output would look like the following:

```
$ ./macgen.py
00:16:3e:20:b0:11
```

```
#!/usr/bin/python
# macgen.py script to generate a MAC address for virtualized guests
#
# import random
#
def randomMAC():
```
Another method to generate a new MAC for your guest
You can also use the built-in modules of python-virtinst to generate a new MAC address and UUID for use in a guest configuration file:

```python
# echo 'import virtinst.util ; print virtinst.util.uuidToString(virtinst.util.randomUUID())' | python
# echo 'import virtinst.util ; print virtinst.util.randomMAC()' | python
```

The script above can also be implemented as a script file as seen below.

```python
#!/usr/bin/env python
# -*- mode: python; -*-
print ""
print "New UUID:"
import virtinst.util ; print virtinst.util.uuidToString(virtinst.util.randomUUID())
print "New MAC:"
import virtinst.util ; print virtinst.util.randomMAC()
print ""
```

# 24.6. Improving guest response time
Virtualized guests can sometimes be slow to respond with certain workloads and usage patterns. Examples of situations which may cause slow or unresponsive guests:

- Severely overcommitted memory.
- Overcommitted memory with high processor usage
- Other (not qemu-kvm processes) busy or stalled processes on the host.

These types of workload may cause guests to appear slow or unresponsive. Usually, the guests memory is eventually fully loaded from swap into the hosts main memory. Once the guest is loaded in main memory, the guest will preform normally. Note, the process of loading a guest from swap to main memory may take several seconds per gigabyte of RAM assigned to the guest depending on the type of storage used for swap and the performance of the components.

KVM virtualized guests function as Linux processes. Linux processes are not permanently kept in main memory (physical RAM). The kernel scheduler swaps process memory into virtual memory (swap). Swap, with conventional hard disk drives, is thousands of times slower than main memory in modern computers. If a guest is inactive for long periods of time, the guest may be placed into swap by the kernel.

KVM virtualized guests processes may be moved to swap regardless of whether memory is overcommitted or overall memory usage.

Using unsafe overcommit levels or overcommitting with swap turned off guest processes or other critical processes may be killed by the pdflush kernel function. pdflush automatically kills processes to keep the system from crashing and to free up memory. Always ensure the host has sufficient swap space when overcommitting memory.
For more information on overcommitting with KVM, refer to *Chapter 20, Overcommitting with KVM.*

### Warning: turning off swap

Virtual memory allows Linux system to use more memory than there is physical RAM on the system. Underused processes are swapped out which allows active processes to use memory, improving memory utilization. Disabling swap reduces memory utilization as all processes are stored in physical RAM.

If swap is turned off, do not overcommit guests. Overcommitting guests without any swap can cause guests or the host system to crash.

### Turning off swap

Swap usage can be completely turned off to prevent guests from being unresponsive while they are moved back to main memory. This may improve performance but will expose the system to certain risks.

The `swapoff` command can disable all swap partitions and swap files on a system.

```
# swapoff -a
```

To make this change permanent, remove `swap` lines from the `/etc/fstab` file and restart the host system.

### Using SSDs for swap

Using Solid State Drives (SSDs) for swap storage may improve the performance of virtualized guests.

Using RAID arrays, faster disks or separate drives dedicated to swap may also improve performance.

### 24.7. Very Secure ftptd

`ftptpd` can provide access to installation trees for para-virtualized guests (for example, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux repositories) or other data. If you have not installed `ftptpd` during the server installation you can grab the RPM package from your `Server` directory of your installation media and install it using the `rpm -ivh vsftpd*.rpm` (note that the RPM package must be in your current directory).

1. To configure `ftptpd`, edit `/etc/passwd` using `vipw` and change the ftp user’s home directory to the directory where you are going to keep the installation trees for your guests. An example entry for the FTP user would look like the following:

   ftp:x:14:50:FTP User:/installtree:/sbin/nologin

2. Verify that `ftptpd` is not enabled using the `chkconfig --list vsftpd`:

   `$ chkconfig --list vsftpd
   vsftpd          0:off   1:off   2:off   3:off   4:off   5:off   6:off`

3. Run the `chkconfig --levels 345 vsftpd on` to start `ftptpd` automatically for run levels 3, 4 and 5.
4. Use the `chkconfig --list vsftpd` command to verify the `vsftpd` daemon is enabled to start during system boot:

```
$ chkconfig --list vsftpd
vsftpd          0:off   1:off   2:off   3:on    4:on    5:on    6:off
```

5. Use the `service vsftpd start vsftpd` to start the vsftpd service:

```
$service vsftpd start vsftpd
Starting vsftpd for vsftpd:                  [  OK  ]
```

24.8. Disable SMART disk monitoring for guests

SMART disk monitoring can be safely disabled as virtual disks and the physical storage devices are managed by the host.

```
# service smartd stop
# chkconfig --del smartd
```

24.9. Configuring a VNC Server

To configure a VNC server use the Remote Desktop application in System > Preferences. Alternatively, you can run the `vino-preferences` command.

The following steps set up a dedicated VNC server session:

1. Edit the `~/.vnc/xstartup` file to start a GNOME session whenever `vncserver` is started. The first time you run the `vncserver` script it will ask you for a password you want to use for your VNC session.

2. A sample `xstartup` file:

```
#!/bin/sh
# Uncomment the following two lines for normal desktop:
# unset SESSION_MANAGER
# exec /etc/X11/xinit/xinitrc
[ -x /etc/vnc/xstartup ] && exec /etc/vnc/xstartup
[ -r $HOME/.Xresources ] && xrdb $HOME/.Xresources
#xsetroot -solid grey
#vncconfig -iconic &
#xterm -geometry 80x24+10+10 -ls -title "$VNCDESKTOP Desktop" &
#xterm &
if test -z "$DBUS_SESSION_BUS_ADDRESS" ; then
eval `dbus-launch --sh-syntax -exit-with-session`
echo "D-BUS per-session daemon address is: \ $DBUS_SESSION_BUS_ADDRESS"
fi
exec gnome-session
```

24.10. Gracefully shutting down guests

Installing virtualized Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guests with the Minimal installation installation option will not install the `acpid` package.
Without the acpid package, the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 guest does not shut down when the `virsh shutdown` command is executed. The `virsh shutdown` command is designed to gracefully shut down virtualized guests.

Using `virsh shutdown` is easier and safer for system administration. Without graceful shut down with the `virsh shutdown` command a system administrator must log into a virtualized guest manually or send the `Ctrl-Alt-Del` key combination to each guest.

**Other virtualized operating systems**

Other virtualized operating systems may be affected by this issue. The `virsh shutdown` command requires that the guest operating system is configured to handle ACPI shut down requests. Many operating systems require additional configuration on the guest operating system to accept ACPI shut down requests.

---

**Procedure 24.1. Workaround for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6**

1. **Install the acpid package**
   The acpid service listen and processes ACPI requests.
   
   Log into the guest and install the acpid package on the guest:
   
   ```
   # yum install acpid
   ```

2. **Enable the acpid service**
   Set the acpid service to start during the guest boot sequence and start the service:
   
   ```
   # chkconfig acpid on
   # service acpid start
   ```

The guest is now configured to shut down when the `virsh shutdown` command is used.

---

**24.11. Virtual machine timer management with libvirt**

Accurate time keeping on virtualized guests is a key challenge for virtualization platforms. Different hypervisors attempt to handle the problem of time keeping in a variety of ways. Libvirt provides hypervisor independent configuration settings for time management, using the `<clock>` and `<timer>` elements in the domain XML. Note that not all options are supported for all hypervisors. The domain XML can be edited using the `virsh edit` command. See *Editing a guest’s configuration file* for details.

**<clock>**

The clock element is used to determine how the guest clock is synchronized with the host clock. The clock element has the following attributes:

- **offset**
  Determines how the guest clock is offset from the host clock. The offset attribute has the following possible values:
Table 24.1. Offset attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>utc</td>
<td>The guest clock will be synchronized to UTC when booted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localtime</td>
<td>The guest clock will be synchronized to the host's configured timezone when booted, if any.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>timezone</td>
<td>The guest clock will be synchronized to a given timezone, specified by the timezone attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable</td>
<td>The guest clock will be synchronized to an arbitrary offset from UTC. The delta relative to UTC is specified in seconds, using the adjustment attribute. The guest is free to adjust the Real Time Clock (RTC) over time and expect that it will be honored following the next reboot. This is in contrast to utc mode, where any RTC adjustments are lost at each reboot.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **timezone**
The timezone to which the guest clock is to be synchronized.

- **adjustment**
The delta for guest clock synchronization. In seconds, relative to UTC.

Example 24.1. Always synchronize to UTC

```xml
<clock offset="utc" /> 
```

Example 24.2. Always synchronize to the host timezone

```xml
<clock offset="localtime" /> 
```

Example 24.3. Synchronize to an arbitrary timezone

```xml
<clock offset="timezone" timezone="Europe/Paris" /> 
```

Example 24.4. Synchronize to UTC + arbitrary offset

```xml
<clock offset="variable" adjustment="123456" /> 
```

**<timer>**

A clock element can have zero or more timer elements as children. The timer element specifies a time source used for guest clock synchronization. The timer element has the following attributes. Only the name is required, all other attributes are optional.

- **name**
The name of the time source to use.
Virtual machine timer management with libvirt

Table 24.2. name attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>platform</td>
<td>The master virtual time source which may be used to drive the policy of other time sources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pit</td>
<td>Programmable Interval Timer - a timer with periodic interrupts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rtc</td>
<td>Real Time Clock - a continuously running timer with periodic interrupts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hpet</td>
<td>High Precision Event Timer - multiple timers with periodic interrupts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tsc</td>
<td>Time Stamp Counter - counts the number of ticks since reset, no interrupts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• wallclock

  Specifies whether the wallclock should track host or guest time. Only valid for a name value of `platform` or `rtc`.

Table 24.3. wallclock attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>host</td>
<td>RTC wallclock always tracks host time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guest</td>
<td>RTC wallclock always tracks guest time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• tickpolicy

  The policy used to pass ticks on to the guest.

Table 24.4. tickpolicy attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>Continue to deliver at normal rate (i.e. ticks are delayed).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catchup</td>
<td>Deliver at a higher rate to catch up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>merge</td>
<td>Ticks merged into one single tick.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discard</td>
<td>All missed ticks are discarded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• frequency

  Used to set a fixed frequency, measured in Hz. This attribute is only relevant for a name value of `tsc`. All other timers operate at a fixed frequency (`pit`, `rtc`), or at a frequency fully controlled by the guest (`hpet`).

• mode

  Determines how the time source is exposed to the guest. This attribute is only relevant for a name value of `tsc`. All other timers are always emulated.

Table 24.5. mode attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auto</td>
<td>Native if safe, otherwise emulated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>native</td>
<td>Always native.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>emulate</td>
<td>Always emulate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 24. Miscellaneous administration tasks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>paravirt</td>
<td>Native + para-virtualized.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **present**
  
  Used to override the default set of timers visible to the guest. For example, to enable or disable the HPET.

  Table 24.6. present attribute values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Force this timer to the visible to the guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no</td>
<td>Force this timer to not be visible to the guest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example 24.5. Clock synchronizing to local time with RTC and PIT timers, and the HPET timer disabled

```xml
<clock mode="localtime">
  <timer name="rtc" tickpolicy="catchup" wallclock="guest" />
  <timer name="pit" tickpolicy="none" />
  <timer name="hpet" present="no" />
</clock>
```
Part V. Virtualization storage topics

Introduction to storage administration for virtualization

These chapters contain information about the storage used in a virtualized environment. The chapters explain the concepts of storage pools and volumes, provide detailed configuration procedures, and cover other relevant storage topics.
Chapter 25.

Storage concepts
This chapter introduces the concepts used for describing managing storage devices.

Local storage
Local storage is directly attached to the host server. Local storage includes local directories, directly attached disks, and LVM volume groups on local storage devices.

Networked storage
Networked storage covers storage devices shared over a network using standard protocols. Networked storage includes shared storage devices using Fibre Channel, iSCSI, NFS, GFS2, and SCSI RDMA protocols. Networked storage is a requirement for migrating guest virtualized guests between hosts.

25.1. Storage pools
A storage pool is a file, directory, or storage device managed by libvirt for the purpose of providing storage to virtualized guests. Storage pools are divided into storage volumes that store virtualized guest images or are attached to virtualized guests as additional storage.

libvirt uses a directory-based storage pool, the /var/lib/libvirt/images/ directory, as the default storage pool. The default storage pool can be changed to another storage pool.

Storage pools can be divided up into volumes or allocated directly to a guest. Volumes of a storage pool can be allocated to virtualized guests. There are two categories of storage pool available:

Local storage pools
Local storage pools are directly attached to the host server. Local storage pools include local directories, directly attached disks, and LVM volume groups on local devices.

Local storage pools are useful for development, testing and small deployments that do not require migration or large numbers of virtualized guests. Local storage pools are not suitable for many production environments as local storage pools do not support live migration.

Networked (shared) storage pools
Networked storage pools covers storage devices shared over a network using standard protocols.

Supported protocols for networked storage pools:
- Fibre Channel-based LUNs
- iSCSI
- NFS
- GFS2
- SCSI RDMA protocols (SCSI RCP), the block export protocol used in Infiniband and 10GbE iWARP adapters.

Networked storage is a requirement for migrating guest virtualized guests between hosts. Networked storage pools are managed by libvirt.
25.2. Volumes

Storage pools are divided into storage volumes. Storage volumes are an abstraction of physical partitions, LVM logical volumes, file-based disk images and other storage types handled by libvirt. Storage volumes are presented to virtualized guests as local storage devices regardless of the underlying hardware.

Referencing volumes

To reference a specific volume, three approaches are possible:

The name of the volume and the storage pool

A volume may be referred to by name, along with an identifier for the storage pool it belongs in. On the virsh command line, this takes the form `--pool storage_pool volume_name`.

For example, a volume named `firstimage` in the `guest_images` pool.

```
# virsh vol-info --pool guest_images
firstimage
Name: firstimage
Type: block
Capacity: 20.00 GB
Allocation: 20.00 GB
```

The full path to the storage on the host system

A volume may also be referred to by its full path on the file system. When using this approach, a pool identifier does not need to be included.

For example, a volume named `secondimage.img`, visible to the host system as `/images/secondimage.img`. The image can be referred to as `/images/secondimage.img`.

```
# virsh vol-info /images/secondimage.img
Name: secondimage.img
Type: file
Capacity: 20.00 GB
Allocation: 136.00 KB
```

The unique volume key

When a volume is first created in the virtualization system, a unique identifier is generated and assigned to it. The unique identifier is termed the `volume key`. The format of this volume key varies upon the storage used.

When used with block based storage such as LVM, the volume key may follow this format:

```
c3pKz4-qPvc-Xf7M-7WNM-WJc8-qSiz-ntvpGn
```

When used with file based storage, the volume key may instead be a copy of the full path to the volume storage.

```
/images/secondimage.img
```

For example, a volume with the volume key of `Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-1JDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr`:

```
# virsh vol-info Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-1JDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr
```
virsh provides commands for converting between a volume name, volume path, or volume key:

**vol-name**
Returns the volume name when provided with a volume path or volume key.

```
# virsh vol-name /dev/guest_images/firstimage firstimage
# virsh vol-name Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-lJDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr
```

**vol-path**
Returns the volume path when provided with a volume key, or a storage pool identifier and volume name.

```
# virsh vol-path Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-lJDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr /dev/guest_images/firstimage
# virsh vol-path --pool guest_images firstimage /dev/guest_images/firstimage
```

The **vol-key command**
Returns the volume key when provided with a volume path, or a storage pool identifier and volume name.

```
# virsh vol-key /dev/guest_images/firstimage Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-lJDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr
# virsh vol-key --pool guest_images firstimage Wlvnf7-a4a3-Tlje-lJDa-9eak-PZBv-LoZuUr
```
Chapter 26.

Storage pools

26.1. Creating storage pools

26.1.1. Dedicated storage device-based storage pools
This section covers dedicating storage devices to virtualized guests.

Security issues with dedicated disks

Guests should not be given write access to whole disks or block devices (for example, /dev/sdb). Use partitions (for example, /dev/sdb1) or LVM volumes.

Guests with full access to a disk device may be able to maliciously access other disk devices that they are not assigned due to disks not having access control lists.

26.1.1.1. Creating a dedicated disk storage pool using virsh
This procedure creates a new storage pool using a dedicated disk device with the virsh command.

Warning
Dedicating a disk to a storage pool will reformat and erase all data presently stored on the disk device. Back up the storage device before commencing the procedure.

1. Create a GPT disk label on the disk
The disk must be relabeled with a GUID Partition Table (GPT) disk label. GPT disk labels allow for creating a large numbers of partitions, up to 128 partitions, on each device. GPT partition tables can store partition data for far more partitions than the msdos partition table.

```bash
# parted /dev/sdb
GNU Parted 2.1
Using /dev/sdb
Welcome to GNU Parted! Type 'help' to view a list of commands.
(parted) mklabel
New disk label type? gpt
(parted) quit
Information: You may need to update /etc/fstab.
```

2. Create the storage pool configuration file
Create a temporary XML text file containing the storage pool information required for the new device.

The file must be in the format shown below, and contain the following fields:

```xml
<name>guest_images_disk</name>

The name parameter determines the name of the storage pool. This example uses the name guest_images_disk in the example below.
The `device` parameter with the `path` attribute specifies the device path of the storage device. This example uses the device `/dev/sdb`.

The file system `target` parameter with the `path` sub-parameter determines the location on the host file system to attach volumes created with this storage pool.

For example, sdb1, sdb2, sdb3. Using `/dev/`, as in the example below, means volumes created from this storage pool can be accessed as `/dev/sdb1`, `/dev/sdb2`, `/dev/sdb3`.

The `format` parameter specifies the partition table type. This example uses the `gpt` in the example below, to match the GPT disk label type created in the previous step.

Create the XML file for the storage pool device with a text editor.

Example 26.1. Dedicated storage device storage pool

```xml
<pool type='disk'>
  <name>guest_images_disk</name>
  <source>
    <device path='/dev/sdb'/>
    <format type='gpt'/>
  </source>
  <target>
    <path>/dev</path>
  </target>
</pool>
```

3. **Attach the device**
Add the storage pool definition using the `virsh pool-define` command with the XML configuration file created in the previous step.

```
# virsh pool-define ~/guest_images_disk.xml
Pool guest_images_disk defined from /root/guest_images_disk.xml
# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes
guest_images_disk    inactive   no
```

4. **Start the storage pool**
Start the storage pool with the `virsh pool-start` command. Verify the pool is started with the `virsh pool-list --all` command.

```
# virsh pool-start guest_images_disk
Pool guest_images_disk started
# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes
guest_images_disk    active     no
```
5. **Turn on autostart**

Turn on `autostart` for the storage pool. Autostart configures the `libvirtd` service to start the storage pool when the service starts.

```
# virsh pool-autostart guest_images_disk
Pool guest_images_disk marked as autostarted
# virsh pool-list --all
Name:         State    Autostart
-------------- ---------- -----------
default       active    yes
guest_images_disk  active    yes
```

6. **Verify the storage pool configuration**

Verify the storage pool was created correctly, the sizes reported correctly, and the state reports as `running`.

```
# virsh pool-info guest_images_disk
Name:           guest_images_disk
UUID:           551a67c8-5f2a-012c-3844-df29b167431c
State:          running
Capacity:       465.76 GB
Allocation:     0.00
Available:      465.76 GB
# ls -la /dev/sdb
brw-rw----. 1 root disk 8, 16 May 30 14:08 /dev/sdb
# virsh vol-list guest_images_disk
Name  Path
--------------------------
```

7. **Optional: Remove the temporary configuration file**

Remove the temporary storage pool XML configuration file if it is not needed.

```
# rm ~/guest_images_disk.xml
```

A dedicated storage device storage pool is now available.

### 26.1.2. Partition-based storage pools

This section covers using a pre-formatted block device, a partition, as a storage pool.

For the following examples, a host has a 500GB hard drive (`/dev/sdc`) partitioned into one 500GB, ext4 formatted partition (`/dev/sdc1`). We set up a storage pool for it using the procedure below.

#### 26.1.2.1. Creating a partition-based storage pool using virt-manager

This procedure creates a new storage pool using a partition of a storage device.

**Procedure 26.1. Creating a partition-based storage pool with virt-manager**

1. **Open the storage pool settings**
   a. In the `virt-manager` graphical interface, select the host from the main window.
      
      Open the `Edit` menu and select `Host Details`
b. Click on the **Storage** tab of the **Host Details** window.
2. **Create the new storage pool**
   a. **Add a new pool (part 1)**
      Press the + button (the add pool button). The **Add a New Storage Pool** wizard appears.

      Choose a **Name** for the storage pool. This example uses the name `guest_images_fs`. Change the **Type** to **fs: Pre-Formatted Block Device**.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

Press the **Forward** button to continue.

b. **Add a new pool (part 2)**
Change the **Target Path**, **Format**, and **Source Path** fields.

![Add Storage Pool](image)

**Target Path**
Enter the location to mount the source device for the storage pool in the **Target Path** field. If the location does not already exist, `virt-manager` will create the directory.

**Format**
Select a format from the **Format** list. The device is formatted with the selected format.

This example uses the **ext4** file system, the default Red Hat Enterprise Linux file system.

**Source Path**
Enter the device in the **Source Path** field.

This example uses the `/dev/sdc1` device.

Verify the details and press the **Finish** button to create the storage pool.

3. **Verify the new storage pool**
The new storage pool appears in the storage list on the left after a few seconds. Verify the size is reported as expected, **458.20 GB Free** in this example. Verify the **State** field reports the new storage pool as **Active**.

Select the storage pool. In the **Autostart** field, click the **On Boot** checkbox. This will make sure the storage device starts whenever the `libvirtd` service starts.
The storage pool is now created, close the Host Details window.

### 26.1.2.2. Creating a partition-based storage pool using virsh

This section covers creating a partition-based storage pool with the `virsh` command.

#### Security warning

Do not use this procedure to assign an entire disk as a storage pool (for example, `/dev/sdb`). Guests should not be given write access to whole disks or block devices. Only use this method to assign partitions (for example, `/dev/sdb1`) to storage pools.

---

#### Procedure 26.2. Creating pre-formatted block device storage pools using virsh

1. **Create the storage pool definition**

   Use the `virsh pool-define-as` command to create a new storage pool definition. There are three options that must be provided to define a pre-formatted disk as a storage pool:

   - **Partition name**
     
     The `name` parameter determines the name of the storage pool. This example uses the name `guest_images_fs` in the example below.

   - **device**
     
     The `device` parameter with the `path` attribute specifies the device path of the storage device. This example uses the partition `/dev/sdc1`.

   - **mountpoint**
     
     The `mountpoint` on the local file system where the formatted device will be mounted. If the mount point directory does not exist, the `virsh` command can create the directory.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

The directory `/guest_images` is used in this example.

```
# virsh pool-define-as guest_images_fs fs - - /dev/sdc1 - "'/guest_images"
Pool guest_images_fs defined
```

The new pool and mount points are now created.

2. **Verify the new pool**

List the present storage pools.

```
# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart  
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes      
guest_images_fs      inactive   no       
```

3. **Create the mount point**

Use the `virsh pool-build` command to create a mount point for a pre-formatted file system storage pool.

```
# virsh pool-build guest_images_fs
Pool guest_images_fs built
# ls -la /guest_images
total 8
drwx------.  2 root root 4096 May 31 19:38 .
dr-xr-xr-x. 25 root root 4096 May 31 19:38 ..
# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart  
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes      
guest_images_fs      inactive   no       
```

4. **Start the storage pool**

Use the `virsh pool-start` command to mount the file system onto the mount point and make the pool available for use.

```
# virsh pool-start guest_images_fs
Pool guest_images_fs started
# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart  
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes      
guest_images_fs      active     no       
```

5. **Turn on autostart**

By default, a storage pool is defined with `virsh` is not set to automatically start each time the `libvirtd` starts. Turn on automatic start with the `virsh pool-autostart` command. The storage pool is now automatically started each time `libvirtd` starts.

```
# virsh pool-autostart guest_images_fs
Pool guest_images_fs marked as autostarted

# virsh pool-list --all
Name                 State      Autostart  
-----------------------------------------
default              active     yes      
guest_images_fs      active     no       
```
6. **Verify the storage pool**
   Verify the storage pool was created correctly, the sizes reported are as expected, and the state is reported as running. Verify there is a "lost+found" directory in the mount point on the file system, indicating the device is mounted.

   ```
   # virsh pool-info guest_images_fs
   Name:           guest_images_fs
   UUID:           c7466869-e82a-a66c-2187-dc9d6f0877d0
   State:          running
   Capacity:       458.39 GB
   Allocation:     197.91 MB
   Available:      458.20 GB
   # mount | grep /guest_images
   /dev/sdc1 on /guest_images type ext4 (rw)
   # ls -la /guest_images
   total 24
   drwxr-xr-x.  3 root root  4096 May 31 19:47 .
   dr-xr-xr-x. 25 root root  4096 May 31 19:38 ..
   drwx------.  2 root root 16384 May 31 14:18 lost+found
   ```

**26.1.3. Directory-based storage pools**
This section covers storing virtualized guests in a directory on the host.

Directory-based storage pools can be created with **virt-manager** or the **virsh** command line tools.

**26.1.3.1. Creating a directory-based storage pool with virt-manager**

1. **Create the local directory**
   a. **Optional: Create a new directory for the storage pool**
      Create the directory on the host for the storage pool. An existing directory can be used if permissions and SELinux are configured correctly. This example uses a directory named `/guest_images`.

     ```
     # mkdir /guest_images
     ```

   b. **Set directory ownership**
      Change the user and group ownership of the directory. The directory must be owned by the root user.

     ```
     # chown root:root /guest_images
     ```

   c. **Set directory permissions**
      Change the file permissions of the directory.

     ```
     # chmod 700 /guest_images
     ```

   d. **Verify the changes**
      Verify the permissions were modified. The output shows a correctly configured empty directory.

     ```
     # ls -la /guest_images
     ```
2. **Configure SELinux file contexts**
   Configure the correct SELinux context for the new directory.
   ```bash
   # semanage fcontext -a -t virt_image_t /guest_images
   ```

3. **Open the storage pool settings**
   a. In the **virt-manager** graphical interface, select the host from the main window.
      
      Open the **Edit** menu and select **Host Details**

      ![Virtual Machine Manager](image)

      b. Click on the **Storage** tab of the **Host Details** window.
4. Create the new storage pool
   a. Add a new pool (part 1)
      Press the + button (the add pool button). The Add a New Storage Pool wizard appears.
      
      Choose a Name for the storage pool. This example uses the name guest_images_dir. Change the Type to dir: Filesystem Directory.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

Press the Forward button to continue.

b. **Add a new pool (part 2)**

Change the **Target Path** field. This example uses `/guest_images`.

 Verify the details and press the **Finish** button to create the storage pool.

5. **Verify the new storage pool**

The new storage pool appears in the storage list on the left after a few seconds. Verify the size is reported as expected, **36.41 GB Free** in this example. Verify the **State** field reports the new storage pool as **Active**.

Select the storage pool. In the **Autostart** field, click the **On Boot** checkbox. This will make sure the storage pool starts whenever the `libvirtd` service starts.
215

The storage pool is now created, close the Host Details window.

26.1.3.2. Creating a directory-based storage pool with virsh

1. **Create the storage pool definition**
   Use the `virsh pool-define-as` command to define a new storage pool. There are two options required for creating directory-based storage pools:

   • The **name** of the storage pool.
     This example uses the name `guest_images_dir`. All further `virsh` commands used in this example use this name.

   • The **path** to a file system directory for storing virtualized guest image files. If this directory does not exist, `virsh` will create it.
     This example uses the `/guest_images` directory.

   ```
   # virsh pool-define-as guest_images_dir dir - - - - "/guest_images"
   Pool guest_images_dir defined
   ```

2. **Verify the storage pool is listed**
   Verify the storage pool object is created correctly and the state reports it as **inactive**.

   ```
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name       State  Autostart
   ------------------------
   default    active  yes
   guest_images_dir inactive no
   ```
3. **Create the local directory**

   Use the `virsh pool-build` command to build the directory-based storage pool. `virsh pool-build` sets the required permissions and SELinux settings for the directory and creates the directory if it does not exist.

   ```bash
   # virsh pool-build guest_images_dir
   Pool guest_images_dir built
   # ls -la /guest_images
   total 8
   drwx------. 2 root root 4096 May 30 02:44 .
   dr-xr-xr-x. 26 root root 4096 May 30 02:44 ..
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name              State    Autostart
   ------------------    --------
   default            active   yes
   guest_images_dir   inactive no
   ```

4. **Start the storage pool**

   Use the `virsh` command `pool-start` for this. `pool-start` enables a directory storage pool, allowing it to be used for volumes and guests.

   ```bash
   # virsh pool-start guest_images_dir
   Pool guest_images_dir started
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name              State    Autostart
   ------------------    --------
   default            active   yes
   guest_images_dir   active   no
   ```

5. **Turn on autostart**

   Turn on `autostart` for the storage pool. Autostart configures the `libvirt` service to start the storage pool when the service starts.

   ```bash
   # virsh pool-autostart guest_images_dir
   Pool guest_images_dir marked as autostarted
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name              State    Autostart
   ------------------    --------
   default            active   yes
   guest_images_dir   active   yes
   ```

6. **Verify the storage pool configuration**

   Verify the storage pool was created correctly, the sizes reported correctly, and the state reports as `running`.

   ```bash
   # virsh pool-info guest_images_dir
   Name:        guest_images_dir
   UUID:        779081bf-7a82-107b-2874-a19a0c51d24c
   State:       running
   Capacity:    49.22 GB
   Allocation:  12.80 GB
   Available:   36.41 GB
   # ls -la /guest_images
   total 8
   drwx------. 2 root root 4096 May 30 02:44 .
   dr-xr-xr-x. 26 root root 4096 May 30 02:44 ..
   ```
A directory-based storage pool is now available.

26.1.4. LVM-based storage pools
This chapter covers using LVM volume groups as storage pools.

LVM-based storage groups provide flexibility of

### Warning

LVM-based storage pools require a full disk partition. This partition will be formatted and all data presently stored on the disk device will be erased. Back up the storage device before commencing the procedure.

26.1.4.1. Creating an LVM-based storage pool with virt-manager

LVM-based storage pools can use existing LVM volume groups or create new LVM volume groups on a blank partition.

1. **Optional: Create new partition for LVM volumes**
   These steps describe how to create a new partition and LVM volume group on a new hard disk drive.

   ### Warning

   This procedure will remove all data from the selected storage device.

   a. **Create a new partition**

      Use the `fdisk` command to create a new disk partition from the command line. The following example creates a new partition that uses the entire disk on the storage device `/dev/sdb`.

      ```bash
      # fdisk /dev/sdb
      Command (m for help):
      
      Press n for a new partition.
      
      b. Press p for a primary partition.
      
      Command action
      e   extended
      p   primary partition (1-4)
      
      c. Choose an available partition number. In this example the first partition is chosen by entering 1.

      ```

      Partition number (1-4): 1

      d. Enter the default first cylinder by pressing `Enter`.

      ```
      First cylinder (1-400, default 1):
      ```
Chapter 26. Storage pools

e. Select the size of the partition. In this example the entire disk is allocated by pressing Enter.

```
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (2-400, default 400):
```

f. Set the type of partition by pressing t.

```
Command (m for help): t
```

g. Choose the partition you created in the previous steps. In this example, the partition number is 1.

```
Partition number (1-4): 1
```

h. Enter 8e for a Linux LVM partition.

```
Hex code (type L to list codes): 8e
```

i. Write changes to disk and quit.

```
Command (m for help): w
Command (m for help): q
```

j. **Create a new LVM volume group**

Create a new LVM volume group with the vgcreate command. This example creates a volume group named `guest_images_lvm`.

```
# vgcreate guest_images_lvm /dev/sdb1
Physical volume "/dev/vdb1" successfully created
Volume group "guest_images_lvm" successfully created
```

The new LVM volume group, `guest_images_lvm`, can now be used for an LVM-based storage pool.

2. **Open the storage pool settings**

a. In the **virt-manager** graphical interface, select the host from the main window.

```
Open the **Edit** menu and select **Host Details**
```
b. Click on the **Storage** tab of the **Host Details** window.
3. **Create the new storage pool**
   a. **Start the Wizard**
      Press the + button (the add pool button). The *Add a New Storage Pool* wizard appears.

      Choose a *Name* for the storage pool. We use `guest_images_lvm` for this example. Then change the *Type* to **logical: LVM Volume Group**, and
Add a new pool (part 2)
Change the Target Path field. This example uses /guest_images.

Now fill in the Target Path and Source Path fields, then tick the Build Pool check box.

- Use the Target Path field to either select an existing LVM volume group or as the name for a new volume group. The default format is /dev/storage_pool_name.
  
  This example uses a new volume group named /dev/guest_images_lvm.

- The Source Path field is optional if an existing LVM volume group is used in the Target Path.
  
  For new LVM volume groups, input the location of a storage device in the Source Path field. This example uses a blank partition /dev/sdc.

- The Build Pool checkbox instructs virt-manager to create a new LVM volume group. If you are using an existing volume group you should not select the Build Pool checkbox.
  
  This example is using a blank partition to create a new volume group so the Build Pool checkbox must be selected.

Verify the details and press the Finish button format the LVM volume group and create the storage pool.

Confirm the device to be formatted
A warning message appears.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

Press the **Yes** button to proceed to erase all data on the storage device and create the storage pool.

4. **Verify the new storage pool**
   The new storage pool will appear in the list on the left after a few seconds. Verify the details are what you expect, *465.76 GB Free* in our example. Also verify the **State** field reports the new storage pool as **Active**.

   It is generally a good idea to have the **Autostart** check box enabled, to ensure the storage pool starts automatically with libvirtd.

   Close the Host Details dialog, as the task is now complete.

26.1.4.2. **Creating an LVM-based storage pool with virsh**

   ```bash
   # virsh pool-define-as guest_images_lvm logical - - /dev/sdc libvirt_lvm /dev/libvirt_lvm
   ```
### 26.1.5. iSCSI-based storage pools

This section covers using iSCSI-based devices to store virtualized guests.

iSCSI (Internet Small Computer System Interface) is a network protocol for sharing storage devices. iSCSI connects initiators (storage clients) to targets (storage servers) using SCSI instructions over the IP layer. For more information and background on the iSCSI protocol refer to [wikipedia's iSCSI article](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISCSI).

#### 26.1.5.1. Configuring a software iSCSI target

The `scsi-target-utils` package provides a tool for creating software-backed iSCSI targets.

---

Procedure 26.3. Creating an iSCSI target

1. **Install the required packages**
   Install the `scsi-target-utils` package and all dependencies
   
   ```
   # yum install scsi-target-utils
   ```

2. **Start the tgtd service**
   The `tgtd` service hosts SCSI targets and uses the iSCSI protocol to host targets. Start the `tgtd` service and make the service persistent after restarting with the `chkconfig` command.
   
   ```
   # service tgtd start
   # chkconfig tgtd on
   ```

3. **Optional: Create LVM volumes**
   LVM volumes are useful for iSCSI backing images. LVM snapshots and resizing can be beneficial for virtualized guests. This example creates an LVM image named `virtimage1` on a new volume group named `virtstore` on a RAID5 array for hosting virtualized guests with iSCSI.
   
   a. **Create the RAID array**
      Creating software RAID5 arrays is covered by the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Deployment Guide.
   
   b. **Create the LVM volume group**
      Create a volume group named `virtstore` with the `vgcreate` command.
      
      ```
      # vgcreate virtstore /dev/md1
      ```
   
   c. **Create a LVM logical volume**
      Create a logical volume group named `virtimage1` on the `virtstore` volume group with a size of 20GB using the `lvcreate` command.
      
      ```
      # lvcreate --size 20G -n virtimage1 virtstore
      ```
      The new logical volume, `virtimage1`, is ready to use for iSCSI.

4. **Optional: Create file-based images**
   File-based storage is sufficient for testing but is not recommended for production environments or any significant I/O activity. This optional procedure creates a file based imaged named `virtimage2.img` for an iSCSI target.
   
   a. **Create a new directory for the image**
      Create a new directory to store the image. The directory must have the correct SELinux contexts.
      
      ```
      # mkdir -p /var/lib/tgtd/virtualization
      ```
   
   b. **Create the image file**
      Create an image named `virtimage2.img` with a size of 10GB.
      
      ```
      # dd if=/dev/zero of=/var/lib/tgtd/virtualization/virtimage2.img bs=1M seek=10000 count=0
      ```
c. **Configure SELinux file contexts**

Configure the correct SELinux context for the new image and directory.

```
# restorecon -R /var/lib/tgtd
```

The new file-based image, `virtimage2.img`, is ready to use for iSCSI.

5. **Create targets**

Targets can be created by adding a XML entry to the `/etc/tgt/targets.conf` file. The `target` attribute requires an iSCSI Qualified Name (IQN). The IQN is in the format:

```
<iqn.yyyy-mm.reversed domain name:optional identifier text>
```

Where:

- `yyyy-mm` represents the year and month the device was started (for example: `2010-05`);
- `reversed domain name` is the hosts domain name in reverse (for example `server1.example.com` in an IQN would be `com.example.server1`); and
- `optional identifier text` is any text string, without spaces, that assists the administrator in identifying devices or hardware.

This example creates iSCSI targets for the two types of images created in the optional steps on `server1.example.com` with an optional identifier `trial`. Add the following to the `/etc/tgt/targets.conf` file.

```
<target iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial>
  backing-store /dev/virtstore/virtimage1  #LUN 1
  backing-store /var/lib/tgtd/virtualization/virtimage2.img  #LUN 2
  write-cache off
</target>
```

Ensure that the `/etc/tgt/targets.conf` file contains the `default-driver iscsi` line to set the driver type as iSCSI. The driver uses iSCSI by default.

**Important**

This example creates a globally accessible target without access control. Refer to the scsi-target-utils for information on implementing secure access.

6. **Restart the tgtd service**

Restart the `tgtd` service to reload the configuration changes.

```
# service tgtd restart
```

7. **iptables configuration**

Open port 3260 for iSCSI access with `iptables`.

```
# iptables -I INPUT -p tcp -m tcp --dport 3260 -j ACCEPT
# service iptables save
```
Chapter 26. Storage pools

8. **Verify the new targets**
   View the new targets to ensure the setup was successful with the `tgt-admin --show` command.

   ```sh
   # tgt-admin --show
   Target 1: iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial
   System information:
   Driver: iscsi
   State: ready
   I_T nexus information:
   LUN information:
   LUN: 0
     Type: controller
     SCSI ID: IET 00010000
     SCSI SN: beaf10
     Size: 0 MB
     Online: Yes
     Removable media: No
     Backing store type: rdwr
     Backing store path: None
   LUN: 1
     Type: disk
     SCSI ID: IET 00010001
     SCSI SN: beaf11
     Size: 20000 MB
     Online: Yes
     Removable media: No
     Backing store type: rdwr
     Backing store path: /dev/virtstore/virtimage1
   LUN: 2
     Type: disk
     SCSI ID: IET 00010002
     SCSI SN: beaf12
     Size: 10000 MB
     Online: Yes
     Removable media: No
     Backing store type: rdwr
     Backing store path: /var/lib/tgtd/virtualization/virtimage2.img
   
   Account information:
   ACL information:
   ALL
   ``

   **Security warning**
   The ACL list is set to all. This allows all systems on the local network to access this device. It is recommended to set host access ACLs for production environments.

9. **Optional: Test discovery**
   Test whether the new iSCSI device is discoverable.

   ```sh
   # iscsiadm --mode discovery --type sendtargets --portal server1.example.com
   127.0.0.1:3260,1 iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1
   ```

10. **Optional: Test attaching the device**
    Attach the new device (iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1) to determine whether the device can be attached.
An iSCSI device is now ready to use for virtualization.

### 26.1.5.2. Adding an iSCSI target to virt-manager

This procedure covers creating a storage pool with an iSCSI target in **virt-manager**.

**Procedure 26.4. Adding an iSCSI device to virt-manager**

1. **Open the host storage tab**
   
   Open the **Storage** tab in the **Host Details** window.

   a. **Open virt-manager**.

   b. **Select a host from the main virt-manager window.**
c. Open the Edit menu and select Host Details.

d. Click on the Storage tab of the Host Details window.
2. **Add a new pool (part 1)**

Press the + button (the add pool button). The **Add a New Storage Pool** wizard appears.

Choose a name for the storage pool, change the Type to iscsi, and press **Forward** to continue.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

3. Add a new pool (part 2)
   Enter the target path for the device, the host name of the target and the source path (the IQN). The **Format** option is not available as formatting is handled by the guests. It is not advised to edit the **Target Path**. The default target path value, `/dev/disk/by-path/`, adds the drive path to that folder. The target path should be the same on all hosts for migration.

   Enter the hostname or IP address of the iSCSI target. This example uses `server1.example.com`.

   Enter the source path, the IQN for the iSCSI target. This example uses `iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1`.

   ![Add Storage Pool](image)

   Press **Finish** to create the new storage pool.

26.1.5.3. Creating an iSCSI-based storage pool with virsh

1. Create the storage pool definition
   The example below is an XML definition file for a iSCSI-based storage pool.

   ```xml
   <name>trial1</name>
   <uuid>afcc5367-6770-e151-bcb3-847bc36c5e28</uuid>
   <host name='server1.example.com'/>
   ```

   The **name** element sets the name for the storage pool. The name is required and must be unique.

   The optional **uuid** element provides a unique global identifier for the storage pool. The **uuid** element can contain any valid UUID or an existing UUID for the storage device. If a UUID is not provided, **virsh** will generate a UUID for the storage pool.

   ```xml
   <host name='server1.example.com'/>
   ```

   The **host** element with the **name** attribute specifies the hostname of the iSCSI server. The **host** element attribute can contain a **port** attribute for a non-standard iSCSI protocol port number.
<device path='iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1'/>

The **device** element **path** attribute must contain the IQN for the iSCSI server.

With a text editor, create an XML file for the iSCSI storage pool. This example uses a XML definition named **trial1.xml**.

```xml
<pool type='iscsi'>
  <name>trial1</name>
  <uuid>afcc5367-6770-e151-bcb3-847bc36c5e28</uuid>
  <source>
    <host name='server1.example.com'/>
    <device path='iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1'/>
  </source>
  <target>
    <path>/dev/disk/by-path</path>
  </target>
</pool>
```

Use the **pool-define** command to define the storage pool but not start it.

```
# virsh pool-define trial1.xml
Pool trial1 defined
```

2. **Alternative step: Use pool-define-as to define the pool from the command line**

Storage pool definitions can be created with the **virsh** command line tool. Creating storage pools with **virsh** is useful for systems administrators using scripts to create multiple storage pools.

The **virsh pool-define-as** command has several parameters which are accepted in the following format:

```
virsh pool-define-as name type source-host source-path source-dev source-name target
```

The type, **iscsi**, defines this pool as an iSCSI based storage pool. The **name** parameter must be unique and sets the name for the storage pool. The **source-host** and **source-path** parameters are the hostname and iSCSI IQN respectively. The **source-dev** and **source-name** parameters are not required for iSCSI-based pools, use a - character to leave the field blank. The **target** parameter defines the location for mounting the iSCSI device on the host.

The example below creates the same iSCSI-based storage pool as the previous step.

```
# virsh pool-define-as trial1 iscsi server1.example.com
  iqn.2010-05.com.example.server1:trial1 - - /dev/disk/by-path
Pool trial1 defined
```

3. **Verify the storage pool is listed**

Verify the storage pool object is created correctly and the state reports as **inactive**.

```
# virsh pool-list --all
Name     State  Autostart
---------- ----------
default   active  yes
trial1    inactive no
```
4. **Start the storage pool**
   Use the virsh command `pool-start` for this. `pool-start` enables a directory storage pool, allowing it to be used for volumes and guests.

   ```
   # virsh pool-start guest_images_disk
   Pool guest_images_disk started
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name                State      Autostart
   -----------------------------------------
   default             active     yes
   trial1               active     no
   ```

5. **Turn on autostart**
   Turn on `autostart` for the storage pool. Autostart configures the libvirtd service to start the storage pool when the service starts.

   ```
   # virsh pool-autostart trial1
   Pool trial1 marked as autostarted
   ```

  Verify that the `trial1` pool has autostart set:

   ```
   # virsh pool-list --all
   Name                State      Autostart
   -----------------------------------------
   default             active     yes
   trial1               active     yes
   ```

6. **Verify the storage pool configuration**
   Verify the storage pool was created correctly, the sizes reported correctly, and the state reports as `running`.

   ```
   # virsh pool-info trial1
   Name: trial1
   UUID: afcc5367-6770-e151-bcb3-847bc36c5e28
   State: running
   Persistent: unknown
   Autostart: yes
   Capacity: 100.31 GB
   Allocation: 0.00
   Available: 100.31 GB
   ```

   An iSCSI-based storage pool is now available.

### 26.1.6. NFS-based storage pools
This procedure covers creating a storage pool with a NFS mount point in `virt-manager`.

#### 26.1.6.1. Creating a NFS-based storage pool with `virt-manager` 

1. **Open the host storage tab**
   Open the `Storage` tab in the `Host Details` window.
   
   a. Open `virt-manager`.
   
   b. Select a host from the main `virt-manager` window.
c. Open the Edit menu and select Host Details.

d. Click on the Storage tab of the Host Details window.
Chapter 26. Storage pools

2. **Create a new pool (part 1)**
   Press the + button (the add pool button). The **Add a New Storage Pool** wizard appears.

Choose a name for the storage pool and press **Forward** to continue.
3. **Create a new pool (part 2)**

Enter the target path for the device, the hostname and the NFS share path. Set the **Format** option to **NFS** or **auto** (to detect the type). The target path must be identical on all hosts for migration.

Enter the hostname or IP address of the NFS server. This example uses server1.example.com.

Enter the NFS path. This example uses /nfstrial.

Press **Finish** to create the new storage pool.
Chapter 27.

Volumes

27.1. Creating volumes

This section shows how to create disk volumes inside a block based storage pool.

```bash
# virsh vol-create-as guest_images_disk volume1 8G
Vol volume1 created

# virsh vol-create-as guest_images_disk volume2 8G
Vol volume2 created

# virsh vol-create-as guest_images_disk volume3 8G
Vol volume3 created

# virsh vol-list guest_images_disk
Name     Path
--------- ------------------
volume1  /dev/sdb1
volume2  /dev/sdb2
volume3  /dev/sdb3

# parted -s /dev/sdb print
Model: ATA ST3500418AS (scsi)
Disk /dev/sdb: 500GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: gpt

Number Start End Size File system Name Flags
2 17.4kB 8590MB 8590MB primary
3 8590MB 17.2GB 8590MB primary
1 21.5GB 30.1GB 8590MB primary

#
```

27.2. Cloning volumes

Placeholder : Needs to describe what "cloning" means in this regard

The new volume will be allocated from storage in the same storage pool as the volume being cloned.

```bash
# virsh vol-clone --pool guest_images_disk volume3 clone1
Vol clone1 cloned from volume3

# virsh vol-list guest_images_disk
Name     Path
--------- ------------------
clone1   /dev/sdb1
volume2  /dev/sdb2
volume3  /dev/sdb3

# parted -s /dev/sdb print
Model: ATA ST3500418AS (scsi)
Disk /dev/sdb: 500GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: gpt

Number Start End Size File system Name Flags
2 8590MB 17.2GB 8590MB primary
3 17.2GB 25.8GB 8590MB primary
1 25.8GB 34.4GB 8590MB primary
```

237
27.3. Adding storage devices to guests

This section covers adding storage devices to a virtualized guest. Additional storage can only be added after guests are created.

27.3.1. Adding file based storage to a guest

File-based storage or file-based containers are files on the hosts file system which act as virtualized hard drives for virtualized guests. To add a file-based container perform the following steps:

1. Create an empty container file or using an existing file container (such as an ISO file).
   a. Create a sparse file using the `dd` command. Sparse files are not recommended due to data integrity and performance issues. Sparse files are created much faster and can used for testing but should not be used in production environments.

   ```
   # dd if=/dev/zero of=/var/lib/libvirt/images/FileName.img bs=1M seek=4096 count=0
   ```

   b. Non-sparse, pre-allocated files are recommended for file-based storage images. Create a non-sparse file, execute:

   ```
   # dd if=/dev/zero of=/var/lib/libvirt/images/FileName.img bs=1M count=4096
   ```

   Both commands create a 400MB file which can be used as additional storage for a virtualized guest.

2. Dump the configuration for the guest. In this example the guest is called `Guest1` and the file is saved in the users home directory.

   ```
   # virsh dumpxml Guest1 > ~/.Guest1.xml
   ```

3. Open the configuration file (`Guest1.xml` in this example) in a text editor. Find the `<disk>` elements, these elements describe storage devices. The following is an example disk element:

   ```xml
   <disk type='file' device='disk'>
       <driver name='virtio' cache='none'/>
       <source file='/var/lib/libvirt/images/Guest1.img'/>
       <target dev='sda'/>
   </disk>
   ```

4. Add the additional storage by duplicating or writing a new `<disk>` element. Ensure you specify a device name for the virtual block device attributes. These attributes must be unique for each guest configuration file. The following example is a configuration file section which contains an additional file-based storage container named `FileName.img`.

   ```xml
   <disk type='file' device='disk'>
       <driver name='virtio' cache='none'/>
       <source file='/var/lib/libvirt/images/Guest1.img'/>
       <target dev='sda'/>
   </disk>
   ```
Adding file based storage to a guest

```
<source file='/var/lib/libvirt/images/FileName.img'/>
<target dev='sdb'/>
</disk>
```

5. Restart the guest from the updated configuration file.

```
# virsh create Guest1.xml
```

6. The following steps are Linux guest specific. Other operating systems handle new storage devices in different ways. For other systems, refer to that operating system's documentation.

The guest now uses the file `FileName.img` as the device called `/dev/sdb`. This device requires formatting from the guest. On the guest, partition the device into one primary partition for the entire device then format the device.

a. Press `n` for a new partition.

```
# fdisk /dev/sdb
Command (m for help):
```

b. Press `p` for a primary partition.

```
Command action
e   extended
p   primary partition (1-4)
```

c. Choose an available partition number. In this example the first partition is chosen by entering 1.

```
Partition number (1-4): 1
```

d. Enter the default first cylinder by pressing `Enter`.

```
First cylinder (1-400, default 1):
```

e. Select the size of the partition. In this example the entire disk is allocated by pressing `Enter`.

```
Last cylinder or +size or +sizeM or +sizeK (2-400, default 400):
```

f. Set the type of partition by pressing `t`.

```
Command (m for help): t
```

g. Choose the partition you created in the previous steps. In this example, the partition number is 1.

```
Partition number (1-4): 1
```

h. Enter 83 for a linux partition.

```
Hex code (type L to list codes): 83
```
**Chapter 27. Volumes**

i. write changes to disk and quit.

```
Command (m for help): w
Command (m for help): q
```

j. Format the new partition with the ext3 file system.

```
# mke2fs -j /dev/sdb1
```

7. Mount the disk on the guest.

```
# mount /dev/sdb1 /myfiles
```

The guest now has an additional virtualized file-based storage device.

### 27.3.2. Adding hard drives and other block devices to a guest

System administrators use additional hard drives to provide increased storage space for a guest, or to separate system data from user data.

**Procedure 27.1. Adding physical block devices to virtualized guests**

This procedure describes how to add a hard drive on the host to a virtualized guest. It applies to all physical block devices, including CD-ROM, DVD and floppy devices.

1. Physically attach the hard disk device to the host. Configure the host if the drive is not accessible by default.

2. Configure the device with `multipath` and persistence on the host if required.

3. Use the `virsh attach` command as below, replacing:

```
# virsh attach-disk myguest /dev/sdb1 sdc --driver tap --mode readonly
```

- `myguest` with the name of the guest.
- `/dev/sdb1` with the device on the host to add.
- `sdc` with the location on the guest where the device should be added. It must be an unused device name.

Use the `sd*` notation for Windows guests as well, the guest will recognize the device correctly.

- Only include the `--mode readonly` parameter if the device should be read only to the guest.

Additionally, there are optional arguments that may be added:

- Append the `--type hdd` parameter to the command for CD-ROM or DVD devices.
- Append the `--type floppy` parameter to the command for floppy devices.

4. The guest now has a new hard disk device called `/dev/sdb` on Linux or `D: drive`, or similar, on Windows. This device may require formatting.
Block device security - disk labels

The host should not use disk labels to identify file systems in the `fstab` file, the `initrd` file or on the kernel command line. Doing so presents a security risk if less privileged users, such as virtualized guests, have write access to whole partitions or LVM volumes.

A virtualized guest could write a disk label belonging to the host, to its own block device storage. Upon reboot of the host, the host could then mistakenly use the virtualized guests disk as a system disk, compromising the host system.

Block device security - whole disk access

Guests should not be given write access to whole disks or block devices (for example, `/dev/sdb`). Virtualized guests with access to block devices may be able to access other block devices on the system or modify volume labels which can be used to compromise the host system. Use partitions (for example, `/dev/sdb1`) or LVM volumes to prevent this issue.

27.4. Deleting and removing volumes

This section shows how to delete a disk volume from a block based storage pool.

```bash
# virsh vol-delete --pool guest_images_disk volume1
Vol volume1 deleted

# virsh vol-list guest_images_disk
Name  Path
-----  -------
volume2  /dev/sdb2
volume3  /dev/sdb3

# parted -s /dev/sdb print
Model: ATA ST3500418AS (scsi)
Disk /dev/sdb: 500GB
Sector size (logical/physical): 512B/512B
Partition Table: gpt

Number  Start  End    Size   File system  Name   Flags
-------  ------  -----  ------  ----------  -----  -----
2  8590MB  17.2GB  8590MB  primary
3  17.2GB  25.8GB  8590MB  primary
```

#
28.1. Creating a virtualized floppy disk controller

Floppy disk controllers are required for a number of older operating systems, especially for installing drivers. Presently, physical floppy disk devices cannot be accessed from virtualized guests. However, creating and accessing floppy disk images from virtualized floppy drives should work. This section covers creating a virtualized floppy device.

An image file of a floppy disk is required. Create floppy disk image files with the `dd` command. Replace `/dev/fd0` with the name of a floppy device and name the disk appropriately.

```bash
# dd if=/dev/fd0 of=~legacydrivers.img
```

This example uses a guest created with `virt-manager` running a fully virtualized Fedora installation with an image located in `/var/lib/libvirt/images/Fedora.img`.

1. Create the XML configuration file for your guest image using the `virsh` command on a running guest.

   ```bash
   # virsh dumpxml Fedora > Fedora.xml
   ```

   This saves the configuration settings as an XML file which can be edited to customize the operations and devices used by the guest. For more information on using the virsh XML configuration files, refer to Chapter 33, Creating custom libvirt scripts.

2. Create a floppy disk image for the guest.

   ```bash
   # dd if=/dev/zero of=/var/lib/libvirt/images/Fedora-floppy.img bs=512 count=2880
   ```

3. Add the content below, changing where appropriate, to your guest's configuration XML file. This example is an emulated floppy device using a file-based image.

   ```xml
   <disk type='file' device='floppy'>
     <source file='/var/lib/libvirt/images/Fedora-floppy.img'/>
     <target dev='fda'/>
   </disk>
   ```

4. Force the guest to stop. To shut down the guest gracefully, use the `virsh shutdown` command instead.

   ```bash
   # virsh destroy Fedora
   ```

5. Restart the guest using the XML configuration file.

   ```bash
   # virsh create Fedora.xml
   ```

The floppy device is now available in the guest and stored as an image file on the host.
Chapter 28. Miscellaneous storage topics

28.2. Configuring persistent storage in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

This section is for systems with external or networked storage; for example, Fibre Channel, iSCSI, or SRP based storage devices. It is recommended that those systems have persistent device names configured for your hosts. This assists live migration as well as providing consistent device names and storage for multiple virtualized systems.

Universally Unique Identifiers (UUIDs) are a standardized method for identifying computers and devices in distributed computing environments. This section uses UUIDs to identify iSCSI, SRP, or Fibre Channel LUNs. UUIDs persist after restarts, disconnection and device swaps. The UUID is similar to a label on the device.

Systems which are not running multipath must use Single path configuration. Systems running multipath can use Multiple path configuration.

Single path configuration

This procedure implements LUN device persistence using udev. Only use this procedure for hosts which are not using multipath.

1. Edit the /etc/scsi_id.config file.

   - Add the following line:

     ```
     options=--whitelisted --replace-whitespace
     ```

   This sets the default options for scsi_id, ensuring returned UUIDs contain no spaces. The IET iSCSI target otherwise returns spaces in UUIDs, which can cause problems.

2. To display the UUID for a given device run the `scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sd*` command. For example:

   ```
   # scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sdc
   1IET_00010001
   ```

   The output may vary from the example above. The output in this example displays the UUID of the device /dev/sdc.

3. Verify the UUID output from the `scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sd*` command is correct and as expected.

4. Create a rule to name the device. Create a file named 20-names.rules in the /etc/udev/rules.d directory. Add new rules to this file. All rules are added to the same file using the same format. Rules follow this format:

   ```
   KERNEL=="sd*", SUBSYSTEM=="block", PROGRAM="/sbin/scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace /dev/$name", RESULT=="UUID", NAME="devicename"
   ```

   Replace UUID and devicename with the UUID retrieved above, and a name for the device. This is an example for the rule above for three example iSCSI luns:

   ```
   KERNEL=="sd*", SUBSYSTEM=="block", PROGRAM="/sbin/scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace /dev/$name", RESULT=="1IET_00010001", NAME="rack4row16lun1"
   KERNEL=="sd*", SUBSYSTEM=="block", PROGRAM="/sbin/scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace /dev/$name", RESULT=="1IET_00010002", NAME="rack4row16lun2"
   ```
Configuring persistent storage in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6

The `udev` daemon now searches all devices named `/dev/sd*` for a matching UUID in the rules. When a matching device is connected to the system the device is assigned the name from the rule. For example:

```
# ls -la /dev/rack4row16*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 18 May 25 23:35 /dev/rack4row16lun1
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 34 May 25 23:35 /dev/rack4row16lun2
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 8, 50 May 25 23:35 /dev/rack4row16lun3
```

5. Copy the changes in `/etc/scsi_id.config` and `/etc/udev/rules.d/20-names.rules` to all relevant hosts.

Networked storage devices with configured rules now have persistent names on all hosts where the files were updated. This means you can migrate guests between hosts using the shared storage and the guests can access the storage devices in their configuration files.

**Multiple path configuration**

The `multipath` package is used for systems with more than one physical path from the computer to storage devices. `multipath` provides fault tolerance, fail-over and enhanced performance for network storage devices attached to Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 systems.

Implementing LUN persistence in a `multipath` environment requires defined alias names for your multipath devices. Each storage device has a UUID, also known as a World Wide Identifier or WWID, which acts as a key for the aliased names.

This procedure implements LUN device persistence using the `multipath` daemon.

1. Determine the World Wide Identifier of each device using the `scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sd*` command:

```
# scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sde
1IET_00010004
# scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sdf
1IET_00010005
# scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sdg
1IET_00010006
# scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/sdh
1IET_00010007
```

2. Create the multipath configuration file, `/etc/multipath.conf`. In it create a `defaults` section, and disable the `user_friendly_names` option unless you have a specific need for it. It is also a good idea to configure the default arguments for the `getuid_callout` option. This is generally a useful start:

```
defaults {
    user_friendly_names no
    getuid_callout      "/sbin/scsi_id --whitelisted --replace-whitespace --device=/dev/%n"
}
```

3. Below the `defaults` section add a `multipaths` section (note the plural spelling). In this section add each of the WWIDs identified from the `scsi_id` command above. For example:

```
multipaths {
```
Chapter 28. Miscellaneous storage topics

```plaintext
multipath {  
  wwid 1IET_00010004  
  alias oramp1  
}
```

```plaintext
multipath {  
  wwid 1IET_00010005  
  alias oramp2  
}
```

```plaintext
multipath {  
  wwid 1IET_00010006  
  alias oramp3  
}
```

```plaintext
multipath {  
  wwid 1IET_00010007  
  alias oramp4  
}
```

Multipath devices are created in the /dev/mapper directory. The above example will create 4 LUNs named /dev/mapper/oramp1, /dev/mapper/oramp2, /dev/mapper/oramp3 and /dev/mapper/oramp4.

4. Enable the multipathd daemon to start at system boot.

```
# chkconfig multipathd on
# chkconfig --list multipathd
multipathd      0:off 1:off 2:on 3:on 4:on 5:on 6:off
```

5. The mapping of these device WWIDs to their alias names will now persist across reboots. For example:

```
# ls -la /dev/mapper/oramp*
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 253, 6 May 26 00:17 /dev/mapper/oramp1  
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 253, 7 May 26 00:17 /dev/mapper/oramp2  
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 253, 8 May 26 00:17 /dev/mapper/oramp3  
brw-rw---- 1 root disk 253, 9 May 26 00:17 /dev/mapper/oramp4
# multipath -ll
oramp1 (1IET_00010004) dm-6 IET,VIRTUAL-DISK  
size=20.0G features='0' hwhandler='0' wp=rw  
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=active  
   `- 8:0:0:4  sde  8:64   active ready running
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=enabled  
   `- 9:0:0:4  sdb1 67:240 active ready running
oramp2 (1IET_00010005) dm-7 IET,VIRTUAL-DISK  
size=20.0G features='0' hwhandler='0' wp=rw  
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=active  
   `- 8:0:0:6  sdg  8:96   active ready running
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=enabled  
   `- 9:0:0:6  sdbn 68:16  active ready running
oramp3 (1IET_00010006) dm-8 IET,VIRTUAL-DISK  
size=20.0G features='0' hwhandler='0' wp=rw  
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=active  
   `- 8:0:0:8  sdf  8:80   active ready running
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=enabled  
   `- 9:0:0:8  sdbm 68:0   active ready running
oramp4 (1IET_00010007) dm-9 IET,VIRTUAL-DISK  
size=20.0G features='0' hwhandler='0' wp=rw  
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=active  
   `- 8:0:0:7  sdh  8:112  active ready running
`-+- policy='round-robin 0' prio=1 status=enabled
```
28.3. Accessing data from a guest disk image

There are various methods for accessing the data from guest image files. One common method is to use the `kpartx` tool, covered by this section, to mount the guest file system as a loop device which can then be accessed.

The `kpartx` command creates device maps from partition tables. Each guest storage image has a partition table embedded in the file.

The `libguestfs` and `guestfish` packages, available from the [EPEL](http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/EPEL) repository, allow advanced modification and access to guest file systems. The `libguestfs` and `guestfish` packages are not covered in this section at this time.

**Warning**

Guests must be offline before their files can be read. Editing or reading files of an active guest is not possible and may cause data loss or damage.

Procedure 28.1. Accessing guest image data

1. Install the `kpartx` package.

   ```
   # yum install kpartx
   ```

2. Use `kpartx` to list partition device mappings attached to a file-based storage image. This example uses a image file named `guest1.img`.

   ```
   # kpartx -l /var/lib/libvirt/images/guest1.img
   loop0p1 : 0 409600 /dev/loop0 63
   loop0p2 : 0 10064717 /dev/loop0 409663
   ```

   `guest1` is a Linux guest. The first partition is the boot partition and the second partition is an EXT3 containing the root partition.

3. Add the partition mappings to the recognized devices in `/dev/mapper/`.

   ```
   # kpartx -a /var/lib/libvirt/images/guest1.img
   ```

   Test that the partition mapping worked. There should be new devices in the `/dev/mapper/` directory.

   ```
   # ls /dev/mapper/
   loop0p1
   loop0p2
   ```

   The mappings for the image are named in the format `loopXpY`.

---

1 http://fedoraproject.org/wiki/EPEL
Chapter 28. Miscellaneous storage topics

4. Mount the loop device which to a directory. If required, create the directory. This example uses /mnt/guest1 for mounting the partition.

```bash
# mkdir /mnt/guest1
# mount /dev/mapper/loop0p1 /mnt/guest1 -o loop,ro
```

5. The files are now available for reading in the /mnt/guest1 directory. Read or copy the files.

6. Unmount the device so the guest image can be reused by the guest. If the device is mounted the guest cannot access the image and therefore cannot start.

```bash
# umount /mnt/guest1
```

7. Disconnect the image file from the partition mappings.

```bash
# kpartx -d /var/lib/libvirt/images/guest1.img
```

The guest can now be restarted.

Accessing data from guest LVM volumes

Many Linux guests use Logical Volume Management (LVM) volumes. Additional steps are required to read data on LVM volumes on virtual storage images.

1. Add the partition mappings for the guest1.img to the recognized devices in the /dev/mapper/ directory.

```bash
# kpartx -a /var/lib/libvirt/images/guest1.img
```

2. In this example the LVM volumes are on a second partition. The volumes require a rescan with the vgscan command to find the new volume groups.

```bash
# vgscan
Reading all physical volumes. This may take a while...
Found volume group "VolGroup00" using metadata type lvm2
```

3. Activate the volume group on the partition (called VolGroup00 by default) with thevgchange -ay command.

```bash
# vgchange -ay VolGroup00
2 logical volumes in volume group VolGroup00 now active.
```

4. Use the lvs command to display information about the new volumes. The volume names (the LV column) are required to mount the volumes.

```bash
# lvs
LV VG Attr Lsize Origin Snap% Move Log Copy%
LogVol00 VolGroup00 -wi-a- 5.06G
LogVol01 VolGroup00 -wi-a- 800.00M
```

5. Mount /dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00 in the /mnt/guestboot/ directory.
6. The files are now available for reading in the /mnt/guestboot directory. Read or copy the files.

7. Unmount the device so the guest image can be reused by the guest. If the device is mounted the guest cannot access the image and therefore cannot start.

```
# umount /mnt/guestboot
```

8. Disconnect the volume group VolGroup00

```
# vgchange -an VolGroup00
```

9. Disconnect the image file from the partition mappings.

```
# kpartx -d /var/lib/libvirt/images/guest1.img
```

The guest can now be restarted.
N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV)

N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) is a function available with some Fibre Channel devices. NPIV shares a single physical N_Port as multiple N_Port IDs. NPIV provides similar functionality for Host Bus Adaptors (HBAs) that SR-IOV provides for network interfaces. With NPIV, virtualized guests can be provided with a virtual Fibre Channel initiator to Storage Area Networks (SANs).

N_Ports are addressed with a 24 bit N_Port ID, which is assigned by the Fibre Channel switch.

Why use NPIV

• Without NPIV virtualized guests must share an HBA’s WWN on the SAN. With NPIV, it is possible to use LUN masking and zoning for virtualized guest.

• With NPIV migration with zones and LUN masking is possible.

• Physical HBAs are expensive and use an expansion slot. With NPIV, more guests can access SAN resources and guest density can be increased.

Each N_Port has a unique identity (port WWN and node WWN) on the SAN and can be used for zoning and LUN masking. Soft zoning, which you can use to group ports together by port WWN, is the preferred method of zoning.

29.1. Enabling NPIV on the switch

Enabling the NPIV on a Fibre Channel port on a switch

```
admin> portCfgShow 0
......
NPIV capability                    ON
......
Usage
portCfgNPIVPort <PortNumber> <Mode>
Mode      Meaning
0             Disable the NPIV capability on the port
1             Enable the NPIV capability on the port
```

Example:

```
admin> portCfgNPIVPort 0 1
```

29.1.1. Identifying HBAs in a Host System

To determine the types of HBAs in the system, enter the following command:

```
# ls /proc/scsi
QLogic HBAs are listed as qla2xxx. Emulex HBAs are listed as lpfc.
```

QLogic Example

```
# ls /proc/scsi/qla2xxx
```

Emulex Example

```
# ls /proc/scsi/lpfc
```
29.1.2. Verify NPIV is used on the HBA

Output the data from the kernel on the port nodes of the HBA.

Example 29.1. QLogic controller example

```
# cat /proc/scsi/qla2xxx/7
FC Port Information for Virtual Ports:
Virtual Port index = 1
Virtual Port 1: VP State = <ACTIVE>, Vp Flags = 0x0
scsiqla2port3=500601609020fd54:500601601020fd54:a00000:1000: 1;
scsiqla2port4=500601609020fd54:500601681020fd54:a10000:1000: 1;
Virtual Port 1 SCSI LUN Information:
  ( 0:10): Total reqs 10, Pending reqs 0, flags 0x0, 2:0:1000,
```

Example 29.2. Emulex controller example

```
# cat /proc/scsi/lpfc/3
SLI Rev: 3
NPIV Supported: VPIs max 127 VPIs used 1
RPIs max 512 RPIs used 13
Vports list on this physical port:
  Vport DID 0x2f0901, vpi 1, state 0x20
  Portname: 48:19:00:0c:29:00:00:0d Nodename: 48:19:00:0c:29:00:00:0b
```

29.1.2.1. Create and destroy a virtual HBA with NPIV

Issue an NPIV create call. Confirm that the host has started a new virtual HBA and that any storage zones are usable.

To create virtual HBAs using `libvirt`, you require a NPIV capable HBA and switch.

Confirm that you have those by manually creating a new HBA by printing the contents of the `/sys/class/fc_host/hostN` directory where `class` is the type of adaptor and `fc_host` is the host number.

Note that the WWN used below are for demonstrative purposes only. Use WWN customized for your SAN environment.

Add a new virtual HBA with the following command where `"1111222233334444:5555666677778888"` is `WWPN:WWNN` and `host5` is the physical HBA which the virtual HBA is a client of.

```
# echo '"1111222233334444:5555666677778888"' > /sys/class/fc_host/host5/vport_create
```

If the creation is successful, a new HBA in the system with the next available host number.

Note

The virtual HBAs can be destroyed with the following command:

```
# echo '"1111222233334444:5555666677778888"' > /sys/class/fc_host/host5/vport_delete
```
**Adding the virtual HBA with virsh**

This procedure covers creating virtual HBA devices on a host with **virsh**. This procedure requires a compatible HBA device.

1. **List available HBAs**
   Find the node device name of the HBA with the virtual adapters. List of all the HBAs on the host with the following command:

   ```
   # virsh nodedev-list -TODD-cap=scsi_host
   pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host
   pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host_0
   pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host
   pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host_0
   pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host_0_scsi_host
   pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host_0_scsi_host_0
   ```

2. **Gather parent HBA device data**
   Output the XML definition for each required HBA. This example uses the HBA, `pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host`.

   ```
   # virsh nodedev-dumpxml pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host
   <device>
   <name>pci_10df_fe00_scsi_host</name>
   <parent>pci_10df_fe00</parent>
   <capability type='scsi_host'>
   <host>5</host>
   <capability type='fc_host'>
   <wwnn>20000000c9848140</wwnn>
   <wwpn>10000000c9848140</wwpn>
   </capability>
   <capability type='vport_ops' />
   </capability>
   </device>
   ```

   HBAs capable of creating virtual HBAs have a capability `type='vport_ops'` in the XML definition.

3. **Create the XML definition for the virtual HBA**
   With information gathered in the previous step, create an XML definition for the virtual HBA. This example uses a file named `newHBA.xml`.

   ```
   <device>
   <parent>pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host</parent>
   <capability type='scsi_host'>
   <capability type='fc_host'>
   <wwpn>1111222233334444</wwpn>
   <wwnn>5555666677778888</wwnn>
   </capability>
   </capability>
   </device>
   ```

   The `<parent>` element is the name of the parent HBA listed by the **virsh nodedev-list** command. The `<wwpn>` and `<wwnn>` elements are the WWNN and WWPN for the virtual HBA.
WWNN and WWPN validation

Libvirt does not validate the WWPN or WWNN values, invalid WWNs are rejected by the kernel and libvirt reports the failure. The error reported by the kernel is similar to the following:

```
# virsh nodedev-create badwwn.xml
error: Failed to create node device from badwwn.xml
error: Write of '11112223334444:55556667778888' to '/sys/class/fc_host/host6/vport_create' during vport create/delete failed: No such file or directory
```

4. **Create the virtual HBA**

Create the virtual HBA with the `virsh nodedev-create` command using the file from the previous step.

```
# virsh nodedev-create newHBA.xml
Node device pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host_0_scsi_host created from newHBA.xml
```

The new virtual HBA should be detected and available to the host. The create command output gives you the node device name of the newly created device.

**Destroying a virtual HBA with virsh**

To destroy the device, use `virsh nodedev-destroy`:

```
# virsh nodedev-destroy pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host_0_scsi_host
Destroyed node device 'pci_10df_fe00_0_scsi_host_0_scsi_host'
```
Part VI. Virtualization reference guide

Virtualization commands, system tools, applications and additional systems reference

These chapters provide detailed descriptions of virtualization commands, system tools, and applications included in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6. These chapters are designed for users requiring information on advanced functionality and other features.
Managing guests with virsh

virsh is a command line interface tool for managing guests and the hypervisor.

The virsh command-line tool is built on the libvirt management API and operates as an alternative to the qemu-kvm command and the graphical virt-manager application. The virsh command can be used in read-only mode by unprivileged users or, with root access, full administration functionality. The virsh command is ideal for scripting virtualization administration.

virsh command quick reference

The following tables provide a quick reference for all virsh command line options.

Table 30.1. Guest management commands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>Prints basic help information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>list</td>
<td>Lists all guests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dumpxml</td>
<td>Outputs the XML configuration file for the guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
<td>Creates a guest from an XML configuration file and starts the new guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>Starts an inactive guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>Forces a guest to stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>define</td>
<td>Outputs an XML configuration file for a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domid</td>
<td>Displays the guest's ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domuuid</td>
<td>Displays the guest's UUID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dominfo</td>
<td>Displays guest information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domname</td>
<td>Displays the guest's name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domstate</td>
<td>Displays the state of a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>Quits the interactive terminal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reboot</td>
<td>Reboots a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restore</td>
<td>Restores a previously saved guest stored in a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resume</td>
<td>Resumes a paused guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>save</td>
<td>Save the present state of a guest to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shutdown</td>
<td>Gracefully shuts down a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspend</td>
<td>Pauses a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undefined</td>
<td>Deletes all files associated with a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>migrate</td>
<td>Migrates a guest to another host.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following virsh command options manage guest and hypervisor resources:

Table 30.2. Resource management options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>setmem</td>
<td>Sets the allocated memory for a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>setmaxmem</td>
<td>Sets maximum memory limit for the hypervisor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 30. Managing guests with virsh

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>setvcpus</td>
<td>Changes number of virtual CPUs assigned to a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcpuinfo</td>
<td>Displays virtual CPU information about a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcpupin</td>
<td>Controls the virtual CPU affinity of a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domblkstat</td>
<td>Displays block device statistics for a running guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>domifstat</td>
<td>Displays network interface statistics for a running guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach-device</td>
<td>Attach a device to a guest, using a device definition in an XML file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach-disk</td>
<td>Attaches a new disk device to a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach-interface</td>
<td>Attaches a new network interface to a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detach-device</td>
<td>Detach a device from a guest, takes the same kind of XML descriptions as command attach-device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detach-disk</td>
<td>Detach a disk device from a guest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>detach-interface</td>
<td>Detach a network interface from a guest.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **virsh** commands for managing and creating storage pools and volumes.

For more information on using storage pools with virsh, refer to [http://libvirt.org/formatstorage.html](http://libvirt.org/formatstorage.html)

### Table 30.3. Storage Pool options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>find-storage-pool-sources</td>
<td>Returns the XML definition for all storage pools of a given type that could be found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find-storage-pool-sources port</td>
<td>Returns data on all storage pools of a given type that could be found as XML. If the host and port are provided, this command can be run remotely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-autostart</td>
<td>Sets the storage pool to start at boot time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-create</td>
<td>The <strong>pool-create</strong> command creates and starts a storage pool from the provided XML storage pool definition file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-create-as name</td>
<td>Creates and starts a storage pool from the provided parameters. If the --print-xml parameter is specified, the command prints the XML definition for the storage pool without creating the storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-define</td>
<td>Creates a storage pool from an XML definition file but does not start the new storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-define-as name</td>
<td>Creates but does not start, a storage pool from the provided parameters. If the --print-xml parameter is specified, the command prints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-destroy</td>
<td>Permanently destroys a storage pool in <code>libvirt</code>. The raw data contained in the storage pool is not changed and can be recovered with the <code>pool-create</code> command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-delete</td>
<td>Destroys the storage resources used by a storage pool. This operation cannot be recovered. The storage pool still exists after this command but all data is deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-dumpxml</td>
<td>Prints the XML definition for a storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-edit</td>
<td>Opens the XML definition file for a storage pool in the users default text editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-info</td>
<td>Returns information about a storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-list</td>
<td>Lists storage pools known to <code>libvirt</code>. By default, <code>pool-list</code> lists pools in use by active guests. The <code>--inactive</code> parameter lists inactive pools and the <code>--all</code> parameter lists all pools.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-undefine</td>
<td>Deletes the definition for an inactive storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-uuid</td>
<td>Returns the UUID of the named pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-name</td>
<td>Prints a storage pool's name when provided the UUID of a storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-refresh</td>
<td>Refreshes the list of volumes contained in a storage pool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pool-start</td>
<td>Starts a storage pool that is defined but inactive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table contains miscellaneous `virsh` commands:

**Table 30.4. Miscellaneous options**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>Displays the version of <code>virsh</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nodeinfo</td>
<td>Outputs information about the hypervisor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Connecting to the hypervisor**

Connect to a hypervisor session with `virsh`:

```sh
# virsh connect {name}
```

Where `{name}` is the machine name (hostname) or URL of the hypervisor. To initiate a read-only connection, append the above command with `--readonly`.

**Creating a virtual machine XML dump (configuration file)**

Output a guest's XML configuration file with `virsh`:

```sh
# virsh dumpxml {guest-id, guestname or uuid}
```
This command outputs the guest's XML configuration file to standard out (stdout). You can save the data by piping the output to a file. An example of piping the output to a file called guest.xml:

```
# virsh dumpxml GuestID > guest.xml
```

This file guest.xml can recreate the guest (refer to Editing a guest's configuration file). You can edit this XML configuration file to configure additional devices or to deploy additional guests. Refer to Section 33.1, "Using XML configuration files with virsh" for more information on modifying files created with virsh dumpxml.

An example of virsh dumpxml output:

```
# virsh dumpxml r5b2-mySQL01
<domain type='kvm' id='13'>
  <name>r5b2-mySQL01</name>
  <uuid>4a4c59a7ee3fc78196e4288f2862f011</uuid>
  <bootloader>/usr/bin/pygrub</bootloader>
  <os>
    <type>linux</type>
    <kernel>/var/lib/libvirt/vmlinuz.2dgnU_</kernel>
    <initrd>/var/lib/libvirt/initrd.UQafMw</initrd>
    <cmdline>ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00 rhgb quiet</cmdline>
  </os>
  <memory>512000</memory>
  <vcpu>1</vcpu>
  <on_poweroff>destroy</on_poweroff>
  <on_reboot>restart</on_reboot>
  <on_crash>restart</on_crash>
  <devices>
    <interface type='bridge'>
      <source bridge='br0'/>
      <mac address='00:16:3e:49:1d:11'/>
      <script path='bridge'/>
    </interface>
    <graphics type='vnc' port='5900'/>
    <console tty='/dev/pts/4'/>
  </devices>
</domain>
```

Creating a guest from a configuration file

Guests can be created from XML configuration files. You can copy existing XML from previously created guests or use the dumpxml option (refer to Creating a virtual machine XML dump (configuration file)). To create a guest with virsh from an XML file:

```
# virsh create configuration_file.xml
```

Editing a guest's configuration file

Instead of using the dumpxml option (refer to Creating a virtual machine XML dump (configuration file)) guests can be edited either while they run or while they are offline. The virsh edit command provides this functionality. For example, to edit the guest named softwaretesting:

```
# virsh edit softwaretesting
```

This opens a text editor. The default text editor is the $EDITOR shell parameter (set to vi by default).
Suspending a guest
Suspend a guest with `virsh`:

```
# virsh suspend {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

When a guest is in a suspended state, it consumes system RAM but not processor resources. Disk
and network I/O does not occur while the guest is suspended. This operation is immediate and the
guest can be restarted with the `resume` (`Resuming a guest`) option.

Resuming a guest
Restore a suspended guest with `virsh` using the `resume` option:

```
# virsh resume {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

This operation is immediate and the guest parameters are preserved for `suspend` and `resume`
operations.

Save a guest
Save the current state of a guest to a file using the `virsh` command:

```
# virsh save {domain-name, domain-id or domain-uuid} filename
```

This stops the guest you specify and saves the data to a file, which may take some time given the
amount of memory in use by your guest. You can restore the state of the guest with the `restore`
(`Restore a guest`) option. Save is similar to pause, instead of just pausing a guest the present state of
the guest is saved.

Restore a guest
Restore a guest previously saved with the `virsh save` command (`Save a guest`) using `virsh`:

```
# virsh restore filename
```

This restarts the saved guest, which may take some time. The guest's name and UUID are preserved
but are allocated for a new id.

Shut down a guest
Shut down a guest using the `virsh` command:

```
# virsh shutdown {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

You can control the behavior of the rebooting guest by modifying the `on_shutdown` parameter in the
guest's configuration file.

Rebooting a guest
Reboot a guest using `virsh` command:

```
#virsh reboot {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```
You can control the behavior of the rebooting guest by modifying the `on_reboot` element in the guest's configuration file.

**Forcing a guest to stop**

Force a guest to stop with the `virsh` command:

```
# virsh destroy {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

This command does an immediate ungraceful shutdown and stops the specified guest. Using `virsh destroy` can corrupt guest file systems. Use the `destroy` option only when the guest is unresponsive.

**Getting the domain ID of a guest**

To get the domain ID of a guest:

```
# virsh domid {domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

**Getting the domain name of a guest**

To get the domain name of a guest:

```
# virsh domname {domain-id or domain-uuid}
```

**Getting the UUID of a guest**

To get the Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) for a guest:

```
# virsh domuuid {domain-id or domain-name}
```

An example of `virsh domuuid` output:

```
# virsh domuuid r5b2-mySQL01
4a4c59a7-ee3f-c781-96e4-288f2862f011
```

**Displaying guest Information**

Using `virsh` with the guest's domain ID, domain name or UUID you can display information on the specified guest:

```
# virsh dominfo {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

This is an example of `virsh dominfo` output:

```
# virsh dominfo r5b2-mySQL01
id:             13
name:           r5b2-mysql01
uuid:           4a4c59a7-ee3f-c781-96e4-288f2862f011
os type:       linux
state:          blocked
cpu(s):         1
cpu time:      11.0s
max memory:     512000 kb
```
Displaying host information
To display information about the host:

```
# virsh nodeinfo
```

An example of `virsh nodeinfo` output:

```
# virsh nodeinfo
CPU model                    x86_64
CPU (s)                      8
CPU frequency                2895 Mhz
CPU socket(s)                2
Core(s) per socket           2
Threads per core:            2
Numa cell(s)                 1
Memory size:                 1046528 kb
```

This displays the node information and the machines that support the virtualization process.

Editing a storage pool definition
The `virsh pool-edit` command takes the name or UUID for a storage pool and opens the XML definition file for a storage pool in the users default text editor.

The `virsh pool-edit` command is equivalent to running the following commands:

```
# virsh pool-dumpxml pool > pool.xml
# vim pool.xml
# virsh pool-define pool.xml
```

Note
The default editor is defined by the `SVVISUAL` or `SEDITOR` environment variables, and default is `vi`.

Displaying the guests
To display the guest list and their current states with `virsh`:

```
# virsh list
```

Other options available include:

the `--inactive` option to list inactive guests (that is, guests that have been defined but are not currently active), and

the `--all` option lists all guests. For example:

```
# virsh list --all
Id Name       State
--------------
0 Domain-0    running
1 Domain202   paused
```
The output from `virsh list` is categorized as one of the six states (listed below).

- The **running** state refers to guests which are currently active on a CPU.

- Guests listed as **blocked** are blocked, and are not running or runnable. This is caused by a guest waiting on I/O (a traditional wait state) or guests in a sleep mode.

- The **paused** state lists domains that are paused. This occurs if an administrator uses the `pause` button in `virt-manager`, `xm pause` or `virsh suspend`. When a guest is paused it consumes memory and other resources but it is ineligible for scheduling and CPU resources from the hypervisor.

- The **shutdown** state is for guests in the process of shutting down. The guest is sent a shutdown signal and should be in the process of stopping its operations gracefully. This may not work with all guest operating systems; some operating systems do not respond to these signals.

- Domains in the **dying** state are in is in process of dying, which is a state where the domain has not completely shut-down or crashed.

- **crashed** guests have failed while running and are no longer running. This state can only occur if the guest has been configured not to restart on crash.

### Displaying virtual CPU information

To display virtual CPU information from a guest with `virsh`:

```bash
# virsh vcpuinfo {domain-id, domain-name or domain-uuid}
```

An example of `virsh vcpuinfo` output:

```bash
# virsh vcpuinfo r5b2-mySQL01
VCPU:   0
CPU:    0
State:  blocked
CPU time: 0.0s
CPU Affinity: yy
```

### Configuring virtual CPU affinity

To configure the affinity of virtual CPUs with physical CPUs:

```bash
# virsh vcpupin domain-id vcpu cpulist
```

The `domain-id` parameter is the guest's ID number or name.

The `vcpu` parameter denotes the number of virtualized CPUs allocated to the guest. The `vcpu` parameter must be provided.

The `cpulist` parameter is a list of physical CPU identifier numbers separated by commas. The `cpulist` parameter determines which physical CPUs the VCPUs can run on.

### Configuring virtual CPU count

To modify the number of CPUs assigned to a guest with `virsh`:
# virsh setvcpus {domain-name, domain-id or domain-uuid} count

The new count value cannot exceed the count above the amount specified when the guest was created.

**Configuring memory allocation**  
To modify a guest's memory allocation with **virsh**:

```
# virsh setmem {domain-id or domain-name} count
```

You must specify the count in kilobytes. The new count value cannot exceed the amount you specified when you created the guest. Values lower than 64 MB are unlikely to work with most guest operating systems. A higher maximum memory value does not affect an active guests. If the new value is lower the available memory will shrink and the guest may crash.

**Displaying guest block device information**  
Use **virsh domblkstat** to display block device statistics for a running guest.

```
# virsh domblkstat GuestName block-device
```

**Displaying guest network device information**  
Use **virsh domifstat** to display network interface statistics for a running guest.

```
# virsh domifstat GuestName interface-device
```

**Migrating guests with virsh**  
A guest can be migrated to another host with **virsh**. Migrate domain to another host. Add --live for live migration. The **migrate** command accepts parameters in the following format:

```
# virsh migrate --live GuestName DestinationURL
```

The --live parameter is optional. Add the --live parameter for live migrations.

The GuestName parameter represents the name of the guest which you want to migrate.

The DestinationURL parameter is the URL or hostname of the destination system. The destination system requires:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4 (ASYNC update 4) or newer,
- the same hypervisor version, and
- the libvirt service must be started.

Once the command is entered you will be prompted for the root password of the destination system.

**Managing virtual networks**  
This section covers managing virtual networks with the **virsh** command. To list virtual networks:
# virsh net-list

This command generates output similar to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>State</th>
<th>Autostart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vnet1</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vnet2</td>
<td>active</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To view network information for a specific virtual network:

# virsh net-dumpxml NetworkName

This displays information about a specified virtual network in XML format:

```xml
<network>
  <name>vnet1</name>
  <uuid>98361b46-1581-acb7-1643-85a412626e70</uuid>
  <forward dev='eth0'/>
  <bridge name='vnet0' stp='on' forwardDelay='0' />  
  <ip address='192.168.100.1' netmask='255.255.255.0'>  
    <dhcp>
      <range start='192.168.100.128' end='192.168.100.254' />
    </dhcp>
  </ip>
</network>
```

Other `virsh` commands used in managing virtual networks are:

- `virsh net-autostart network-name` — Autostart a network specified as `network-name`.
- `virsh net-create XMLfile` — generates and starts a new network using an existing XML file.
- `virsh net-define XMLfile` — generates a new network device from an existing XML file without starting it.
- `virsh net-destroy network-name` — destroy a network specified as `network-name`.
- `virsh net-name network UUID` — convert a specified `network UUID` to a network name.
- `virsh net-uuid network-name` — convert a specified `network name` to a network UUID.
- `virsh net-start nameOfInactiveNetwork` — starts an inactive network.
- `virsh net-undefine nameOfInactiveNetwork` — removes the definition of an inactive network.
Managing guests with the Virtual Machine Manager (virt-manager)

This section describes the Virtual Machine Manager (\texttt{virt-manager}) windows, dialog boxes, and various GUI controls.

\texttt{virt-manager} provides a graphical view of hypervisors and guest on your system and on remote machines. You can use \texttt{virt-manager} to define virtualized guests. \texttt{virt-manager} can perform virtualization management tasks, including:

- assigning memory,
- assigning virtual CPUs,
- monitoring operational performance,
- saving and restoring, pausing and resuming, and shutting down and starting virtualized guests,
- links to the textual and graphical consoles, and
- live and offline migrations.

31.1. Starting \texttt{virt-manager}

To start \texttt{virt-manager} session open the \texttt{Applications} menu, then the \texttt{System Tools} menu and select \texttt{Virtual Machine Manager (virt-manager)}.

The \texttt{virt-manager} main window appears.
Chapter 31. Managing guests with the Virtual Machine Manager (virt-manager)

Figure 31.1. Starting virt-manager

Alternatively, virt-manager can be started remotely using ssh as demonstrated in the following command:

```
ssh -X host's address
[remotehost]# virt-manager
```

Using ssh to manage virtual machines and hosts is discussed further in Section 19.1, “Remote management with SSH”.

31.2. The Virtual Machine Manager main window

This main window displays all the running guests and resources used by guests. Select a virtualized guest by double clicking the guest's name.
The virtual hardware details window

31.3. The virtual hardware details window

The virtual hardware details window displays information about the virtual hardware configured for the virtualized guest. Virtual hardware resources can be added, removed and modified in this window. To access the virtual hardware details window, click on the icon in the toolbar.
Figure 31.3. The virtual hardware details icon

Clicking the icon displays the virtual hardware details window.
Virtual Machine graphical console

This window displays a virtualized guest's graphical console. Virtualized guests use different techniques to export their local virtual framebuffers, but both technologies use VNC to make them available to the Virtual Machine Manager's console window. If your virtual machine is set to require authentication, the Virtual Machine graphical console prompts you for a password before the display appears.
A note on security and VNC

VNC is considered insecure by many security experts, however, several changes have been made to enable the secure usage of VNC for virtualization on Red Hat enterprise Linux. The guest machines only listen to the local host's loopback address (127.0.0.1). This ensures only those with shell privileges on the host can access virt-manager and the virtual machine through VNC.

Remote administration can be performed following the instructions in Chapter 19, Remote management of virtualized guests. TLS can provide enterprise level security for managing guest and host systems.

Your local desktop can intercept key combinations (for example, Ctrl+Alt+F11) to prevent them from being sent to the guest machine. You can use virt-manager sticky key' capability to send these sequences. You must press any modifier key (Ctrl or Alt) 3 times and the key you specify gets treated as active until the next non-modifier key is pressed. Then you can send Ctrl-Alt-F11 to the guest by entering the key sequence ‘Ctrl Ctrl Ctrl Alt+F1’.

SPICE is an alternative to VNC available for Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
31.5. Adding a remote connection

This procedure covers how to set up a connection to a remote system using `virt-manager`.

1. To create a new connection open the File menu and select the Add Connection... menu item.

2. The Add Connection wizard appears. Select the hypervisor. For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 systems select QEMU/KVM. Select Local for the local system or one of the remote connection options and click Connect. This example uses Remote tunnel over SSH which works on default installations. For more information on configuring remote connections refer to Chapter 19, Remote management of virtualized guests

   ![Add Connection](image)

   Figure 31.6. Add Connection

3. Enter the root password for the selected host when prompted.

A remote host is now connected and appears in the main `virt-manager` window.
31.6. Displaying guest details

You can use the Virtual Machine Monitor to view activity information for any virtual machines on your system.

To view a virtual system's details:
1. In the Virtual Machine Manager main window, highlight the virtual machine that you want to view.

Figure 31.8. Selecting a virtual machine to display
2. From the Virtual Machine Manager **Edit** menu, select **Virtual Machine Details**.

![Virtual Machine Manager](image)

**Figure 31.9. Displaying the virtual machine details**

On the **Virtual Machine** window, select **Overview** from the navigation pane on the left hand side.

The **Overview** view shows a summary of configuration details for the virtualized guest.
3. Select **Performance** from the navigation pane on the left hand side.

The **Performance** view shows a summary of guest performance, including CPU and Memory usage.
Figure 31.11. Displaying guest performance details
4. Select **Processor** from the navigation pane on the left hand side. The **Processor** view allows you to view or change the current processor allocation.

![Processor allocation panel](image)

**Figure 31.12. Processor allocation panel**
5. Select **Memory** from the navigation pane on the left hand side. The **Memory** view allows you to view or change the current memory allocation.

![Image of virt-manager interface showing Memory view]

*Figure 31.13. Displaying memory allocation*
6. Each virtual disk attached to the virtual machine is displayed in the navigation pane. Click on a virtual disk to modify or remove it.

![Figure 31.14. Displaying disk configuration](image)

7. Each virtual network interface attached to the virtual machine is displayed in the navigation pane. Click on a virtual network interface to modify or remove it.

![Figure 31.15. Displaying network configuration](image)

### 31.7. Performance monitoring

Performance monitoring preferences can be modified with `virt-manager`'s preferences window.

To configure Performance monitoring:
1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Preferences**.

![Virtual Machine Manager interface with Preferences selected](image)

**Figure 31.16. Modifying guest preferences**

The **Preferences** window appears.
2. From the **Stats** tab specify the time in seconds or stats polling options.

![Preferences window with Stats tab selected](image)

**Figure 31.17. Configuring performance monitoring**

### 31.8. Displaying CPU usage

To view the CPU usage for all virtual machines on your system:
1. From the View menu, select Graph, then the CPU Usage check box.

![Selecting CPU usage](image)

**Figure 31.18. Selecting CPU usage**

2. The Virtual Machine Manager shows a graph of CPU usage for all virtual machines on your system.

![Displaying CPU usage](image)

**Figure 31.19. Displaying CPU usage**

### 31.9. Displaying Disk I/O

To view the disk I/O for all virtual machines on your system:
Displaying Network I/O

1. From the View menu, select Graph, then the Disk I/O check box.

![Figure 31.20. Selecting Disk I/O](image)

2. The Virtual Machine Manager shows a graph of Disk I/O for all virtual machines on your system.

![Figure 31.21. Displaying Disk I/O](image)

### 31.10. Displaying Network I/O

To view the network I/O for all virtual machines on your system:
Chapter 31. Managing guests with the Virtual Machine Manager (virt-manager)

1. From the View menu, select Graph, then the Network I/O check box.

![Figure 31.22. Selecting Network I/O](image)

2. The Virtual Machine Manager shows a graph of Network I/O for all virtual machines on your system.

![Figure 31.23. Displaying Network I/O](image)

31.11. Managing a virtual network

To configure a virtual network on your system:
1. From the **Edit** menu, select **Host Details**.

![Virtual Machine Manager](image)

*Figure 31.24. Selecting a host's details*
2. This will open the **Host Details** menu. Click the **Virtual Networks** tab.

![Figure 31.25. Virtual network configuration](image)

3. All available virtual networks are listed on the left-hand box of the menu. You can edit the configuration of a virtual network by selecting it from this box and editing as you see fit.

**31.12. Creating a virtual network**

To create a virtual network on your system:
1. Open the Host Details menu (refer to Section 31.11, “Managing a virtual network”) and click the Add Network button, identified by a plus sign (+) icon.

![Virtual network configuration](image)

Figure 31.26. Virtual network configuration

This will open the Create a new virtual network window. Click Forward to continue.
Creating a new virtual network

This assistant will guide you through creating a new virtual network. You will be asked for some information about the virtual network you'd like to create, such as:

- A **name** for your new virtual network
- The IPv4 **address** and **netmask** to assign
- The **address range** from which the **DHCP** server will allocate addresses for virtual machines
- Whether to **forward** traffic to the physical network

Figure 31.27. Creating a new virtual network
2. Enter an appropriate name for your virtual network and click **Forward**.

![Naming your virtual network](image)

**Figure 31.28. Naming your virtual network**
3. Enter an IPv4 address space for your virtual network and click **Forward**.

![Figure 31.29. Choosing an IPv4 address space](image)

**Network:** 192.168.100.0/24

**Hint:** The network should be chosen from one of the IPv4 private address ranges, e.g., 10.0.0.0/8, 172.16.0.0/12, or 192.168.0.0/16

- Netmask: 255.255.255.0
- Broadcast: 192.168.100.255
- Gateway: 192.168.100.1
- Size: 256 addresses
- Type: Private
4. Define the DHCP range for your virtual network by specifying a **Start** and **End** range of IP addresses. Click **Forward** to continue.

![Selecting the DHCP range](image)

**Selecting the DHCP range**

Please choose the range of addresses the DHCP server will allocate to virtual machines attached to the virtual network.

- **Enable DHCP:**
  - Check box
- **Start:** 192.168.100.128
- **End:** 192.168.100.254

**Tip:** Unless you wish to reserve some addresses to allow static network configuration in virtual machines, these parameters can be left with their default values.

Figure 31.30. Selecting the DHCP range
5. Select how the virtual network should connect to the physical network.

If you select **Forwarding to physical network**, choose whether the **Destination** should be **Any physical device** or a specific physical device. Also select whether the **Mode** should be **NAT** or **Routed**.

Click **Forward** to continue.
6. You are now ready to create the network. Check the configuration of your network and click Finish.

![Create a new virtual network](image)

### Ready to create network

**Summary**
- Network name: network1

**IPv4 network**
- Network: 192.168.100.0/24
- Gateway: 192.168.100.1
- Netmask: 255.255.255.0

**DHCP**
- Start address: 192.168.100.128
- End address: 192.168.100.254

**Forwarding**
- Connectivity: Isolated network

![Figure 31.32. Ready to create network](image)
7. The new virtual network is now available in the **Virtual Network** tab of the **Host Details** window.

![Image](image_url) **Figure 31.33. New virtual network is now available**
libvirt configuration reference

This chapter provides a reference for various parameters of libvirt XML configuration files.

Table 32.1. libvirt configuration files

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pae</td>
<td>Specifies the physical address extension configuration data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apic</td>
<td>Specifies the advanced programmable interrupt controller configuration data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memory</td>
<td>Specifies the memory size in megabytes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vcpus</td>
<td>Specifies the numbers of virtual CPUs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>console</td>
<td>Specifies the port numbers to export the domain consoles to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nic</td>
<td>Specifies the number of virtual network interfaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vif</td>
<td>Lists the randomly-assigned MAC addresses and bridges assigned to use for the domain's network addresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disk</td>
<td>Lists the block devices to export to the domain and exports physical devices to domain with read only access.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhcp</td>
<td>Enables networking using DHCP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>netmask</td>
<td>Specifies the configured IP netmasks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gateway</td>
<td>Specifies the configured IP gateways.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acpi</td>
<td>Specifies the advanced configuration power interface configuration data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating custom libvirts scripts

This section provides some information which may be useful to programmers and system administrators intending to write custom scripts to make their lives easier by using libvirt.

Chapter 24, Miscellaneous administration tasks is recommended reading for programmers thinking of writing new applications which use libvirt.

33.1. Using XML configuration files with virsh

virsh can handle XML configuration files. You may want to use this to your advantage for scripting large deployments with special options. You can add devices defined in an XML file to a running virtualized guest. For example, to add a ISO file as hdc to a running guest create an XML file:

```xml
# cat satelliteiso.xml
<disk type="file" device="disk">
  <driver name="file"/>
  <source file="/var/lib/libvirt/images/rhn-satellite-5.0.1-11-redhat-linux-as-i386-4-embedded-oracle.iso"/>
  <target dev="hdc"/>
  <readonly/>
</disk>
```

Run `virsh attach-device` to attach the ISO as hdc to a guest called "satellite":

```
# virsh attach-device satellite satelliteiso.xml
```
Part VII. Troubleshooting

Introduction to troubleshooting and problem solving

The following chapters provide information to assist you in troubleshooting issues you may encounter using virtualization.

Important note on virtualization issues

Your particular problem may not appear in this book due to ongoing development which creates and fixes bugs. For the most up to date list of known bugs, issues and bug fixes read the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 Release Notes for your version and hardware architecture. The Release Notes can be found in the documentation section of the Red Hat website, www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/enterprise/.

If all else fails...

Contact Red Hat Global Support Services (https://www.redhat.com/apps/support/). Our staff can assist you in resolving your issues.

1 http://www.redhat.com/docs/manuals/enterprise/
Troubleshooting

This chapter covers common problems and solutions for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 virtualization issues.

This chapter is to give you, the reader, a background to identify where problems with virtualization technologies are. Troubleshooting takes practice and experience which are difficult to learn from a book. It is recommended that you experiment and test virtualization on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 to develop your troubleshooting skills.

If you cannot find the answer in this document there may be an answer online from the virtualization community. Refer to Section A.1, “Online resources” for a list of Linux virtualization websites.

34.1. Debugging and troubleshooting tools

This section summarizes the System Administrator applications, the networking utilities, and debugging tools. You can employ these standard System administration tools and logs to assist with troubleshooting:

- **kvm_stat**
- **kvmtrace**
- **vmstat**
- **iostat**
- **lsof**
- **systemtap**
- **crash**
- **sysrq**
- **sysrq t**
- **sysrq w**

These networking tools can assist with troubleshooting virtualization networking problems:

- **ifconfig**
- **tcpdump**

  The `tcpdump` command ‘sniffs’ network packets. `tcpdump` is useful for finding network abnormalities and problems with network authentication. There is a graphical version of `tcpdump` named `wireshark`.

- **brctl**

  `brctl` is a networking tool that inspects and configures the Ethernet bridge configuration in the Virtualization linux kernel. You must have root access before performing these example commands:

```
# brctl show
bridge-name  bridge-id  STP enabled  interfaces
------------------------- ---------------- -----------------------------------------------
virtbr0        8000.fefffff  yes      eth0
```
listed below are some other useful commands for troubleshooting virtualization.

- **strace** is a command which traces system calls and events received and used by another process.

- **vncviewer** is a command which connects to a VNC server running on your server or a virtual machine. Install vncviewer using the `yum install vnc` command.

- **vncserver** is a command which starts a remote desktop on your server. Gives you the ability to run graphical user interfaces such as virt-manager via a remote session. Install vncserver using the `yum install vnc-server` command.

### 34.2. kvm_stat

The **kvm_stat** command is a python script which retrieves runtime statistics from the kvm kernel module. The **kvm_stat** command can be used to diagnose guest behavior visible to kvm. In particular, performance related issues with guests. Currently, the reported statistics are for the entire system; the behavior of all running guests is reported.

The **kvm_stat** command requires that the kvm kernel module is loaded and **debugfs** is mounted. If either of these features are not enabled, the command will output the required steps to enable **debugfs** or the kvm module. For example:

```
# kvm_stat
Please mount debugfs ('mount -t debugfs debugfs /sys/kernel/debug')
and ensure the kvm modules are loaded
```

Mount **debugfs** if required:

```
# mount -t debugfs debugfs /sys/kernel/debug
```

**kvm_stat output**

The **kvm_stat** command outputs statistics for all virtualized guests and the host. The output is updated until the command is terminated (using **Ctrl+c** or the **q** key).

```
# kvm_stat
kvm statistics
refer_reload                 94       0
exits                  4003074   31272
fpu_reload             1313881   10796
```
### kvm_stat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Value 1</th>
<th>Value 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>halt_exits</td>
<td>14050</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>halt_wakeup</td>
<td>4496</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host_state_reload</td>
<td>1638354</td>
<td>24893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypercalls</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insn_emulation</td>
<td>1093850</td>
<td>1909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insn_emulation_fail</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invlpg</td>
<td>75569</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>io_exits</td>
<td>1596984</td>
<td>24509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irq_exits</td>
<td>21913</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irq_injections</td>
<td>48839</td>
<td>1222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irq_window</td>
<td>24656</td>
<td>870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>largepages</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmio_exits</td>
<td>11873</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_cache_miss</td>
<td>42565</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_flooded</td>
<td>14752</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_pde_zapped</td>
<td>58730</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_pte_updated</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_pte_write</td>
<td>138795</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_recycled</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_shadow_zapped</td>
<td>48358</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmu_unsync</td>
<td>793</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmi_injections</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mmi_window</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf_fixed</td>
<td>697731</td>
<td>3150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pf_guest</td>
<td>279349</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remote_tlb_flush</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>request_irq</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>signal_exits</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tlb_flush</td>
<td>200190</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Explanation of variables:

**efer_reload**

The number of Extended Feature Enable Register (EFER) reloads.

**exits**

The count of all VMEXIT calls.

**fpu_reload**

The number of times a VMENTRY reloaded the FPU state. The fpu_reload is incremented when a guest is using the Floating Point Unit (FPU).

**halt_exits**

Number of guest exits due to halt calls. This type of exit is usually seen when a guest is idle.

**halt_wakeup**

Number of wakeups from a halt.

**host_state_reload**

Count of full reloads of the host state (currently tallies MSR setup and guest MSR reads).

**hypercalls**

Number of guest hypervisor service calls.

**insn_emulation**

Number of guest instructions emulated by the host.

**insn_emulation_fail**

Number of failed insn_emulation attempts.

**io_exits**

Number of guest exits from I/O port accesses.
Chapter 34. Troubleshooting

irq_exits
   Number of guest exits due to external interrupts.

irq_injections
   Number of interrupts sent to guests.

irq_window
   Number of guest exits from an outstanding interrupt window.

largepages
   Number of large pages currently in use.

mmio_exits
   Number of guest exits due to memory mapped I/O (MMIO) accesses.

mmu_cache_miss
   Number of KVM MMU shadow pages created.

mmu_flooded
   Detection count of excessive write operations to an MMU page. This counts detected write operations not of individual write operations.

mmu_pde_zapped
   Number of page directory entry (PDE) destruction operations.

mmu_pte_updated
   Number of page table entry (PTE) destruction operations.

mmu_pte_write
   Number of guest page table entry (PTE) write operations.

mmu_recycled
   Number of shadow pages that can be reclaimed.

mmu_shadow_zapped
   Number of invalidated shadow pages.

mmu_unsync
   Number of non-synchronized pages which are not yet unlinked.

nmi_injections
   Number of Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) injections to the guest.

nmi_window
   Number of guest exits from (outstanding) Non-maskable Interrupt (NMI) windows.

pf_fixed
   Number of fixed (non-paging) page table entry (PTE) maps.

pf_guest
   Number of page faults injected into guests.

remote_tlb_flush
   Number of remote (sibling CPU) Translation Lookaside Buffer (TLB) flush requests.
Log files

request_irq
Number of guest interrupt window request exits.

signal_exits
Number of guest exits due to pending signals from the host.

tlb_flush
Number of tlb_flush operations performed by the hypervisor.

Note
The output information from the kvm_stat command is exported by the KVM hypervisor as pseudo files located in the /sys/kernel/debug/kvm/ directory.

34.3. Log files
KVM uses various log files. All the log files are standard ASCII files, and accessible with a text editor.

- The default directory for all file-based images is the /var/lib/libvirt/images directory.

- qemu-kvm.[PID].log is the log file created by the qemu-kvm process for each fully virtualized guest. When using this log file, you must retrieve the given qemu-kvm process PID, by using the ps command to examine process arguments to isolate the qemu-kvm process on the virtual machine. Note that you must replace the [PID] symbol with the actual PID qemu-kvm process.

If you encounter any errors with the Virtual Machine Manager, you can review the generated data in the virt-manager.log file that resides in the /.virt-manager directory. Note that every time you start the Virtual Machine Manager, it overwrites the existing log file contents. Make sure to backup the virt-manager.log file, before you restart the Virtual Machine manager after a system error.

34.4. Troubleshooting with serial consoles
Linux kernels can output information to serial ports. This is useful for debugging kernel panics and hardware issues with video devices or headless servers. The subsections in this section cover setting up serial console output for machines running Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 virtualization kernels and their virtualized guests.

This section covers how to enable serial console output for fully virtualized guests.

Fully virtualized guest serial console output can be viewed with the virsh console command.

Be aware fully virtualized guest serial consoles have some limitations. Present limitations include:

- output data may be dropped or scrambled.

The serial port is called ttyS0 on Linux or COM1 on Windows.

You must configure the virtualized operating system to output information to the virtual serial port.

To output kernel information from a fully virtualized Linux guest into the domain modify the /boot/grub/grub.conf file by inserting the line console=tty0 console=ttyS0,115200.

```plaintext
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (2.6.32-36.x86-64)
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.32-36.x86-64 ro root=/dev/volgroup00/logvol00
console=tty0 console=ttyS0,115200
```
Chapter 34. Troubleshooting

initrd /initrd-2.6.32-36.x86-64.img

Reboot the guest.

On the host, access the serial console with the following command:

# virsh console

You can also use virt-manager to display the virtual text console. In the guest console window, select Serial Console from the View menu.

34.5. Virtualization log files

• /var/log/libvirt/qemu/GuestName.log

If you encounter any errors with the Virtual Machine Manager, you can review the generated data in the virt-manager.log file that resides in the ./virt-manager directory. Note that every time you start the Virtual Machine Manager, it overwrites the existing log file contents. Make sure to backup the virt-manager.log file, before you restart the Virtual Machine manager after a system error.

34.6. Loop device errors

If file-based guest images are used you may have to increase the number of configured loop devices. The default configuration allows up to eight active loop devices. If more than eight file-based guests or loop devices are needed the number of loop devices configured can be adjusted in /etc/modprobe.conf. Edit /etc/modprobe.conf and add the following line to it:

options loop max_loop=64

This example uses 64 but you can specify another number to set the maximum loop value. You may also have to implement loop device backed guests on your system. To use a loop device backed guests for a full virtualized system, use the phy: device or file: file commands.

34.7. Enabling Intel VT and AMD-V virtualization hardware extensions in BIOS

This section describes how to identify hardware virtualization extensions and enable them in your BIOS if they are disabled.

The Intel VT extensions can be disabled in the BIOS. Certain laptop vendors have disabled the Intel VT extensions by default in their CPUs.

The virtualization extensions cannot be disabled in the BIOS for AMD-V.

The virtualization extensions are sometimes disabled in BIOS, usually by laptop manufacturers. Refer to the following section for instructions on enabling disabled virtualization extensions.

Verify the virtualization extensions are enabled in BIOS. The BIOS settings for Intel® VT or AMD-V are usually in the Chipset or Processor menus. The menu names may vary from this guide, the virtualization extension settings may be found in Security Settings or other non standard menu names.

Procedure 34.1. Enabling virtualization extensions in BIOS

1. Reboot the computer and open the system’s BIOS menu. This can usually be done by pressing the delete key, the F1 key or Alt and F4 keys depending on the system.
2. **Enabling the virtualization extensions in BIOS**

   **Note: BIOS steps**

   Many of the steps below may vary depending on your motherboard, processor type, chipset and OEM. Refer to your system's accompanying documentation for the correct information on configuring your system.

   a. Open the **Processor** submenu. The processor settings menu may be hidden in the **Chipset**, **Advanced CPU Configuration** or **Northbridge**.
   b. Enable **Intel Virtualization Technology** (also known as Intel VT). **AMD-V** extensions cannot be disabled in the BIOS and should already be enabled. The virtualization extensions may be labeled **Virtualization Extensions**, **Vanderpool** or various other names depending on the OEM and system BIOS.
   c. Enable Intel VTd or AMD IOMMU, if the options are available. Intel VTd and AMD IOMMU are used for PCI passthrough.
   d. Select **Save & Exit**.

3. Reboot the machine.

4. When the machine has booted, run `cat /proc/cpuinfo | grep vmx svm`. If the command outputs, the virtualization extensions are now enabled. If there is no output your system may not have the virtualization extensions or the correct BIOS setting enabled.

### 34.8. KVM networking performance

By default, KVM virtual machines are assigned a virtual Realtek 8139 (rtl8139) NIC (network interface controller).

The rtl8139 virtualized NIC works fine in most environments. However, this device can suffer from performance degradation problems on some networks, for example, a 10 Gigabit Ethernet network.

To improve performance switch to the para-virtualized network driver.

   **Note**

   Note that the virtualized Intel PRO/1000 (e1000) driver is also supported as an emulated driver choice. To use the e1000 driver, replace **virtio** in the procedure below with **e1000**. For the best performance it is recommended to use the **virtio** driver.

**Procedure 34.2. Switching to the virtio driver**

1. Shutdown the guest operating system.

2. Edit the guest's configuration file with the **virsh** command (where **GUEST** is the guest's name):

   ```bash
   # virsh edit GUEST
   ```

   The **virsh edit** command uses the **$EDITOR** shell variable to determine which editor to use.
3. Find the network interface section of the configuration. This section resembles the snippet below:

```xml
<interface type='network'>
    [output truncated]
    <model type='rtl8139' />
</interface>
```

4. Change the type attribute of the model element from 'rtl8139' to 'virtio'. This will change the driver from the rtl8139 driver to the e1000 driver.

```xml
<interface type='network'>
    [output truncated]
    <model type='virtio' />
</interface>
```

5. Save the changes and exit the text editor

6. Restart the guest operating system.

**Creating new guests using other network drivers**

Alternatively, new virtualized guests can be created with a different network driver. This may be required if you are having difficulty installing guests over a network connection. This method requires you to have at least one virtualized guest already created (possibly installed from CD or DVD) to use as a template.

1. Create an XML template from an existing virtualized guest (in this example, named *Guest1*):

   ```bash
   # virsh dumpxml Guest1 > /tmp/guest-template.xml
   ```

2. Copy and edit the XML file and update the unique fields: virtual machine name, UUID, disk image, MAC address, and any other unique parameters. Note that you can delete the UUID and MAC address lines and virsh will generate a UUID and MAC address.

   ```bash
   # cp /tmp/guest-template.xml /tmp/new-guest.xml
   # vi /tmp/new-guest.xml
   
   Add the model line in the network interface section:
   
   ```xml
   <interface type='network'>
       [output truncated]
       <model type='virtio' />
   </interface>
   ```

3. Create the new virtual machine:

   ```bash
   # virsh define /tmp/new-guest.xml
   # virsh start new-guest
   ```
Appendix A. Additional resources

To learn more about virtualization and Red Hat Enterprise Linux, refer to the following resources.

A.1. Online resources

• http://www.libvirt.org/ is the official website for the libvirt virtualization API.

• http://virt-manager.et.redhat.com/ is the project website for the Virtual Machine Manager (virt-manager), the graphical application for managing virtual machines.

• Open Virtualization Center
  http://www.openvirtualization.com

• Red Hat Documentation
  http://www.redhat.com/docs/

• Virtualization technologies overview
  http://virt.kernelnewbies.org

• Red Hat Emerging Technologies group
  http://et.redhat.com

A.2. Installed documentation

• man virsh and /usr/share/doc/libvirt-<version-number> — Contains sub commands and options for the virsh virtual machine management utility as well as comprehensive information about the libvirt virtualization library API.

• /usr/share/doc/gnome-applet-vm-<version-number> — Documentation for the GNOME graphical panel applet that monitors and manages locally-running virtual machines.

• /usr/share/doc/libvirt-python-<version-number> — Provides details on the Python bindings for the libvirt library. The libvirt-python package allows python developers to create programs that interface with the libvirt virtualization management library.

• /usr/share/doc/python-virtinst-<version-number> — Provides documentation on the virt-install command that helps in starting installations of Fedora and Red Hat Enterprise Linux related distributions inside of virtual machines.

• /usr/share/doc/virt-manager-<version-number> — Provides documentation on the Virtual Machine Manager, which provides a graphical tool for administering virtual machines.
Glossary
This glossary is intended to define the terms used in this Installation Guide.

**Bare-metal**  
The term bare-metal refers to the underlying physical architecture of a computer. Running an operating system on bare-metal is another way of referring to running an unmodified version of the operating system on the physical hardware. An example of operating system running on bare metal is a normally installed operating system.

**Full virtualization**  
KVM uses full, hardware-assisted virtualization. Full virtualization uses hardware features of the processor to provide total abstraction of the underlying physical system (Bare-metal) and creates a new virtual machine in which the guest operating systems can run. No modifications are needed in the guest operating system. The guest operating system and any applications on the guest are not aware of the virtualized environment and run normally. Para-virtualization requires a modified version of the Linux operating system.

**Fully virtualized**  
See Full virtualization.

**Guest system**  
Also known as guests, virtual machines, virtual servers or domains.

**Hardware Virtual Machine**  
See Full virtualization

**Host**  
The host operating system runs virtualized guests.

**Hypervisor**  
The hypervisor is the software layer that abstracts the hardware from the operating system permitting multiple operating systems to run on the same hardware. The hypervisor runs on a host operating system allowing other virtualized operating systems to run on the host's hardware.

The Kernel-based Virtual Machine hypervisor is provided with Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

**I/O**  
Short for input/output (pronounced “eye-oh”). The term I/O describes any program, operation or device that transfers data to or from a computer and to or from a peripheral device. Every transfer is an output from one device and an input into another. Devices such as keyboards and mouses are input-only devices while devices such as printers are output-only. A writable CD-ROM is both an input and an output device.

**Kernel SamePage Merging**  
Kernel SamePage Merging (KSM) is used by the KVM hypervisor to allow KVM guests to share identical memory pages. The pages shared are usually common libraries or other identical, high-use data. KSM allows for greater guest density of identical or similar guest operating systems by avoiding memory duplication.

For information on using KSM with Red Hat Enterprise Linux refer to Chapter 21, KSM.

**Kernel-based Virtual Machine**  
KVM (Kernel-based Virtual Machine) is a Full virtualization solution for Linux on AMD64 and Intel 64 hardware. KVM is a Linux kernel module built for the standard Red Hat Enterprise Linux kernel. KVM
can run multiple, unmodified virtualized guest Windows and Linux operating systems. The KVM hypervisor in Red Hat Enterprise Linux is managed with the libvirt API and tools built for libvirt, `virt-manager` and `virsh`.

KVM is a set of Linux kernel modules which manage devices, memory and management APIs for the Hypervisor module itself. Virtualized guests are run as Linux processes and threads which are controlled by these modules.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux KVM hypervisors can be managed by the Red Hat Enterprise Virtualization Manager as an alternative to libvirt.

**LUN**

A Logical Unit Number (LUN) is a number assigned to a logical unit (a SCSI protocol entity).

**MAC Addresses**

The Media Access Control Address is the hardware address for a Network Interface Controller. In the context of virtualization MAC addresses must be generated for virtual network interfaces with each MAC on your local domain being unique.

**Migration**

Migration is the term for the process of moving a virtualized guest from one host to another. Migration can be conducted offline (where the guest is suspended and then moved) or live (where a guest is moved without suspending).

**Offline migration**

An offline migration suspends the guest then moves an image of the guest's memory to the destination host.

**Live migration**

Live migration is the process of migrating a *running* guest from one physical host to another physical host.

**Para-virtualization**

Para-virtualization is only available in Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5. Para-virtualization uses software mechanisms to share devices and system resources with specially-designed kernels or newer kernels with the PV-opts features.

**Para-virtualized**

See *Para-virtualization*,

**Para-virtualized drivers**

Para-virtualized drivers are device drivers that operate on fully virtualized Linux guests. These drivers greatly increase performance of network and block device I/O for fully virtualized guests.

**PCI passthrough**

The KVM hypervisor supports attaching PCI devices on the host system to virtualized guests. PCI passthrough allows guests to have exclusive access to PCI devices for a range of tasks. PCI passthrough allows PCI devices to appear and behave as if they were physically attached to the guest operating system.

**Physical Functions**

Physical Functions (PFs) are full PCIe devices that include the SR-IOV capabilities. Physical Functions are discovered, managed, and configured as normal PCI devices. Physical Functions configure and manage the SR-IOV functionality by assigning *Virtual Functions*. 
Security Enhanced Linux

Short for Security Enhanced Linux, SELinux uses Linux Security Modules (LSM) in the Linux kernel to provide a range of minimum privilege required security policies.

Single Root I/O Virtualization

SR-IOV is a standard for a type of PCI passthrough which natively shares a single device to multiple guests.

SR-IOV enables a Single Root Function (for example, a single Ethernet port), to appear as multiple, separate, physical devices. A physical device with SR-IOV capabilities can be configured to appear in the PCI configuration space as multiple functions, each device has its own configuration space complete with Base Address Registers (BARs).

SR-IOV uses two new PCI functions:

- **Physical Functions**
- **Virtual Functions**

Universally Unique Identifier

A Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) is a standardized numbering method for devices, systems and certain software objects in distributed computing environments. Types of UUIDs in virtualization include: ext2 and ext3 file system identifiers, RAID device identifiers, iSCSI and LUN device identifiers, MAC addresses and virtual machine identifiers.

Virtual Functions

Virtual Functions (VFs) are simple PCIe functions that only process I/O. Each Virtual Function is derived from a **Physical Function**. The number of Virtual Functions a device may have is limited by the device hardware. A single Ethernet port, the Physical Device, may map to many Virtual Functions that can be shared to virtualized guests.

Virtual machines

A virtual machine is a software implementation of a physical machine or programming language (for example the Java Runtime Environment or LISP). Virtual machines in the context of virtualization are operating systems running on virtualized hardware.

Virtualization

Virtualization is a broad computing term for running software, usually operating systems, concurrently and isolated from other programs on one system. Most existing implementations of virtualization use a hypervisor, a software layer that controls hardware and provides guest operating systems with access to underlying hardware. The hypervisor allows multiple operating systems to run on the same physical system by giving the guest operating system virtualized hardware. There are various methods for virtualizing operating systems:

- Hardware-assisted virtualization is the technique used for full virtualization with KVM (definition: **Full virtualization**)
- Para-virtualization is a technique used by Xen to run Linux guests (definition: **Para-virtualization**)
- Software virtualization or emulation. Software virtualization uses binary translation and other emulation techniques to run unmodified
operating systems. Software virtualization is significantly slower than hardware-assisted virtualization or para-virtualization. Software virtualization, in the form of QEMU or BORCH, works in Red Hat Enterprise Linux, it's just slow.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux supports hardware-assisted, full virtualization with the KVM hypervisor.

Virtualized CPU

A system has a number of virtual CPUs (VCPUs) relative to the number of physical processor cores. The number of virtual CPUs is finite and represents the total number of virtual CPUs that can be assigned to guest virtual machines.

Xen

_Xen is not available as a hypervisor type for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 and newer. Xen is only supported for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 and newer._

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5 supports the Xen hypervisor and the KVM hypervisor (refer to _Kernel-based Virtual Machine_). Both hypervisors have different architectures and development approaches. The Xen hypervisor runs underneath a Red Hat Enterprise Linux operating system which acts as a host managing system resources and virtualization APIs.

Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 is supported as a para-virtualized and fully-virtualized guest of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4 (and newer) running the Xen hypervisor. Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6 is also supported as a guest of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.4 (and newer) running the KVM hypervisor.
Appendix B. Revision History

Revision 6.0-35  Mon Oct 04 2010  Scott Radvan  sradvan@redhat.com
Review for 6.0 release.

Revision 6.0-25  Thu Sep 09 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Resolves BZ#621740.2.

Revision 6.0-24  Fri Sep 03 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Updated para-virtualized driver usage procedures. BZ#621740.2.

Revision 6.0-23  Tue May 25 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
New storage content BZ#536816.2.

Revision 6.0-22  Fri May 14 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Fixes BZ#587911, which expands supported storage devices.
Updated Introduction chapter
Updated Troubleshooting chapter
Updated KSM chapter
Updated overcommitting guidance.

Revision 6.0-11  Tue Apr 20 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Beta version update. Various fixes included.

Revision 6.0-10  Thu Apr 15 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Forward-ported the following fixes from the Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.5 release:
Fixes BZ#573558, and expands SR-IOV content.
Fixes BZ#559052, expands the KVM para-virtualized drivers chapter.
Fixes BZ#578342.
Fixes BZ#573553.
Fixes BZ#573556.
Fixes BZ#573549.
Fixes BZ#534020.
Fixes BZ#573555.

Revision 6.0-5  Mon Mar 01 2010  Christopher Curran  ccurran@redhat.com
Beta version released.
Appendix C. Colophon

This manual was written in the DocBook XML v4.3 format.

This book is based on the original work of Jan Mark Holzer, Justin Clift and Chris Curran.

This book is edited and maintained by Scott Radvan.

Other writing credits go to:

- Daniel Berrange contributed various sections on libvirt.
- Don Dutile contributed technical editing for the para-virtualized drivers section.
- Barry Donahue contributed technical editing for the para-virtualized drivers section.
- Rick Ring contributed technical editing for the Virtual Machine Manager Section.
- Michael Kearey contributed technical editing for the sections on using XML configuration files with virsh and virtualized floppy drives.
- Marco Grigull contributed technical editing for the software compatibility and performance section.
- Eugene Teo contributed technical editing for the Managing Guests with virsh section.

Publican, the publishing tool which produced this book, was written by Jeffrey Fearn.

Translators

Due to technical limitations, the translators credited in this section are those who worked on previous versions of the Red Hat Enterprise Linux Virtualization Guide and the Fedora Virtualization Guide.

To find out who translated the current version of the guide, visit https://fedoraproject.org/wiki/Fedora_13_Documentation_Translations_-_ Contributors. These translators will receive credit in subsequent versions of this guide.

- Simplified Chinese
  - Leah Wei Liu
- Traditional Chinese
  - Chester Cheng
  - Terry Chuang
- Japanese
  - Kiyoto Hashida
- Korean
  - Eun-ju Kim
- Dutch
  - Geert Warrink
- French
Appendix C. Colophon

• Sam Friedmann
• German
  • Hedda Peters
• Greek
  • Nikos Charonitakis
• Italian
  • Silvio Pierro
  • Francesco Valente
• Brazilian Portuguese
  • Glauca de Freitas
  • Leticia de Lima
• Spanish
  • Domingo Becker
  • Héctor Daniel Cabrera
  • Angela Garcia
  • Gladys Guerrero
• Russian
  • Yuliya Poyarkova